

A FIRST LATIN READER

BY

H. C. NUTTING, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA



UNIVERSITY OF
CALIFORNIA

NEW YORK ·· CINCINNATI ·· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Gift of Pres. Wheeler,

COPYRIGHT, 1912, BY

H. C. NUTTING.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

NUTTING, LATIN READER.

W.P. I

TO THE
AMERICAN

PA 2095
N8
1912
MAIN

PREFACE

WITH the Primer previously published, this Reader provides for a course of study leading up to Caesar or some other author of like difficulty. Students who are to give five years or more to preparatory Latin would normally devote a year each to the Primer and the Reader; but the maturer pupils in the four-year course will cover easily in their first year the work outlined in both books.

It is hoped too, that, aside from use in this regular sequence, the Reader will be found to meet the needs of many teachers who are looking for a carefully graded text for supplementary reading or for translation at sight.

The plan for "beginning Latin" embodied in Primer and Reader differs from others most fundamentally, perhaps, in that it concentrates so definitely upon the problem of developing the student's power to read Latin; and it is quite in harmony with that general design that this second book is called a "Reader," and that in it the Latin-English exercises are massed at one point, with notes at the foot of the page.

Teachers using the Reader can best coöperate toward realizing the writer's aim if each recitation period is divided definitely into two parts, the first to be devoted, without distraction, to the business of learning to read, the other being reserved for grammatical drill and for composition work, oral or written. In this way, without loss in any essential particular, it will be found possible to bring the student along, by natural stages, to the point where he will

attack a simple passage from Caesar or Nepos, not as a Chinese puzzle by laborious effort to be tortured into something remotely resembling sense, but as a story from the reading of which some pleasure and profit is to be derived.

For the development of a system of Latin-English exercises so graded as to serve the purpose for which the Reader is made, of course no Latin author was available; and the text, therefore, is necessarily for the most part original. With the idea of stimulating interest, and to bring into play the necessary vocabulary and syntax while yet meeting halfway the many who do "not care for (foreign) war," the first hundred lessons have been made to deal almost entirely with matters of American history, the initial series (1-45) summing up briefly and chronologically the main events of the years 1492-1783, and the second group (46-100) comprising short anecdotes assembled without regard for chronological sequence. Next follow two narratives from Caesar simplified (101-125), and the concluding series (126-140) is made up of selections from the original text of Caesar, Nepos, Suetonius, Sallust, and Cicero. This final group, of course, is not a part of the gradatim plan, but was added that the student might have the satisfaction of reading some "real Latin." The passage from Suetonius (131), chiefly because of its large vocabulary, will probably be found too difficult for most pupils; if so, the intrinsic interest of the passage may make it seem worth the teacher's while to undertake a translation for the class.

With a view to discouraging the habit of constant recourse to the general vocabulary, a series of lesson preparations has been provided in the form of a word list showing the important new words in each successive exercise: moreover, with the exception of proper names and

numerals, all words which are used in but a single lesson are defined in the footnotes on that exercise. For teachers who are using the Reader as a text for sight reading, the cross references of the notes may prove helpful as providing a means of locating familiar material with which to elucidate the lesson of the day.

In preparing the Latin text, I have derived some help from the handbooks in common use, but my main reliance has been Merguet's "Lexikon zu den Schriften Cäsars." I would also acknowledge gratefully the generous help of my colleague, Dr. M. E. Deutsch, who has read a large part of the text and given me the benefit of several valuable suggestions.

H. C. N.

BERKELEY, CALIFORNIA.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LATIN-ENGLISH EXERCISES

EARLY AMERICAN HISTORY

	PAGE		PAGE
1. Christopher Columbus	1	23. William Penn and the Friends	26
2. Christopher Columbus (<i>con- tinued</i>)	2	24. Nathaniel Bacon in Virginia .	27
3. Christopher Columbus (<i>con- tinued</i>)	3	25. Nathaniel Bacon (<i>continued</i>)	28
4. Christopher Columbus (<i>con- cluded</i>)	4	26. Nathaniel Bacon (<i>concluded</i>)	30
5. The Cabots	5	27. The Boyhood of George Washington	31
6. Captain John Smith	6	28. Experiences on the Frontier .	32
7. Captain John Smith (<i>con- tinued</i>)	6	29. A Dangerous Mission	33
8. Captain John Smith (<i>con- tinued</i>)	7	30. A Dangerous Mission (<i>con- tinued</i>)	34
9. Captain John Smith (<i>con- cluded</i>)	10	31. The Beginning of the French and Indian War	35
10. Pocahontas	11	32. Braddock's Defeat	36
11. Henry Hudson	12	33. Later Events of the War	37
12. Henry Hudson (<i>continued</i>) .	13	34. The Outbreak of the Revolu- tion	38
13. Colonization in New Eng- land	14	35. Operations about Boston	39
14. A Soldier's Courtship	16	36. The Battles of Long Island and Trenton	41
15. Unrest among the Indians	17	37. The Retreat from Trenton	42
16. Old Friends become Enemies .	18	38. Burgoyne's Campaign	43
17. The Outbreak of King Phil- ip's War	20	39. Valley Forge	44
18. A Remarkable Deliverance	21	40. Help from France	45
19. Philip finds Allies	22	41. Benedict Arnold	46
20. Captain Church	23	42. A Roman who fought against his Country	48
21. The Death of Philip	24	43. The Surrender of Cornwallis .	49
22. End of the War	25	44. Washington retires to Private Life	51
		45. The Father of his Country	52

TALES OF LAND AND SEA

	PAGE		PAGE
46. The Settler's Daughter	54	74. The Treasure Seekers	88
47. The Trials of War	55	75. A Dangerous Conspiracy	90
48. The Attempt to surprise De- troit	56	76. A Dangerous Conspiracy (continued)	91
49. The Attempt to surprise De- troit (continued)	57	77. A Quick-Witted Messenger	92
50. A Successful Ruse	58	78. Fortune favors the Brave	93
51. How the Town was Saved	59	79. Andrew Jackson	94
52. An Example of Fortitude	61	80. Pirates Ashore	95
53. A Hasty Leave-Taking	62	81. Carrying the Tribute	97
54. The Capture of a Man-of- War	63	82. A Successful Ambuscade	98
55. The Fall of New London	64	83. An Intrepid Commander	99
56. The Fall of New London (<i>con- tinued</i>)	65	84. Burned at the Stake	101
57. Captivity among the Indians	67	85. An Early Morning Surprise	102
58. A Fresh Supply of Powder	68	86. Some Very Distinguished Geese	103
59. A Battle against Great Odds	69	87. An Army of Two	104
60. A Night Attack	70	88. Horatius at the Bridge	105
61. A Choice of Evils	71	89. A Favor Repaid	108
62. Lost in the Woods	72	90. An Earthquake in Colonial Times	109
63. The Battle of Saratoga	73	91. Evils of the Slave Trade	110
64. Unwelcome Visitors	74	92. A Pirate Outdone	111
65. The Boyhood of Daniel Boone	76	93. Colonization in Africa	112
66. The End of the Pequots	78	94. A Prize Won and Lost	113
67. The End of the Pequots (<i>con- tinued</i>)	79	95. A Prize Won and Lost (<i>con- tinued</i>)	114
68. A Difficult Escape	80	96. A Mysterious Disappear- ance	116
69. Stories about Daniel Boone	81	97. Early Days in Liberia	118
70. An English Privateer	82	98. An Experience with Rob- bers	119
71. A Roman Vandal	83	99. The Capture of Stony Point	120
72. Indian Vengeance	86	100. Nathan Hale	121
73. A Tale of Brave Women	87		

STORIES FROM CAESAR RETOLD

THE WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

101. Unexpected Trouble	123	103. Division of Opinion in the Roman Camp	126
102. A Parley with the Enemy	125		

	PAGE		PAGE
104. The Advice of the Enemy is Taken	127	111. A Messenger eludes the Enemy	137
105. The Romans are Ambushed	128	112. Caesar heads a Relief Force	138
106. The Enemy Prevail	130	113. The Besieged learn of Caesar's Approach	139
107. Annihilation of the Roman Force	131	114. The Enemy raise the Siege.	141
108. The Gauls attack a Second Camp	133	115. They are Outgeneraled by Caesar	142
109. The Besieged attempt to Communicate with Caesar	134	116. Arrangements for the Rest of the Winter	143
110. Heroic Defense of their Camp	135		

AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

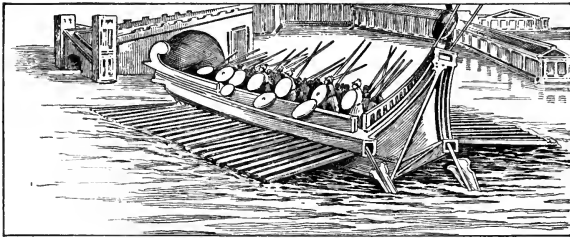
117. Caesar lands a Force in Africa	145	122. Narrow Escape of their Commander	152
118. Operations about Utica	147	123. King Juba marches to the Relief of Varus	154
119. Curio gains an Initial Advantage	148	124. The Numidians resort to Strategy	155
120. He maintains his Army's Loyalty to Caesar	149	125. Curio's Army is Annihilated	156
121. The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse	151		

SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS

126-128. An Episode from the Gallic War	158	131. The Death of Caesar	166
129-130. An Episode from the Civil War	163	132-133. The Fate of Hannibal	169
		134-136. Catiline's Conspiracy	172
		137-140. On the Eastern Frontier	178
WORD LIST			186
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY			199

LIST OF MAPS

Gallia	124
The Scene of Curio's Campaign in Africa	146
Asia Minor	179



NĀVIS

The above illustration is taken from a Pompeian wall painting. It is interesting particularly as showing the rather primitive steering-gear used by the Romans even for heavy ships of war. In large vessels two helmsmen worked together, each controlling a single sweep. On small boats one man attended to the steering, using either one oar or two, according to the construction of the craft.

LATIN-ENGLISH EXERCISES

EARLY AMERICAN HISTORY

LESSON I

Christopher Columbus

Quōdam in oppidō Ītaliae ōlim nātus est puer, qui Columbus appellābātur. Diū in patris officinā labōrāvit. Sed prope erat mare, puerque saepe ad litus ibat, ut vidēret nāvēs, quae ē portū ad terrās exhibant dīversās. In 5 nāvibus erant hominēs multī, et Columbus mare ipse trānsire saepe voluit; tum autem pecūniam nūllam habēbat. Sed postea, cum iam iuvenis esset, usque ad Britanniam et Āfricam nāvīgāvit.

Illis temporibus nautae timēbant mare Atlanticum, cursumque prope litus tenēbant. Interdum autem secundum 10 Āfricae ōram longē nāvīgātum erat, quod Henricus, rēx Lūsitāniae, invenire viam volēbat, quā nāvēs circum Āfricam prōgressae, ad Asiam pervenire possent.

Line 2. officinā: officina, -ae, F., workshop.

7. usque ad: all the way to, lit. even to.

9. illis temporibus: in those days.

10. interdum: not interim.

11. ōram: i.e. litus (ōra, -ae, F.). — nāvīgātum erat: people had

sailed, lit. it had been sailed (impersonal passive).

12. quā: by which; antecedent, viam.

13. possent: could; subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose. In translating the verb *possum*, some other rendering than "be able" should often be chosen.

Quidam tum credēbant terram esse rotundam, Columbusque etiam spērāre coeperat se trānsīre mare Atlanticum posse, et ita ad Asiam pervenire; nēmō enim intellegēbat terram tam magnam esse, nec Columbus ipse suspicātus est Americam interpōnī.

LESSON 2

Christopher Columbus (Continued)

Interim Henricus rēx mortuus erat. Columbus tamen in Lūsitāniam profectus est, ut rēgī tum ibi rēgnum obtinentī cōnsilium suum aperīret; sed pecūniam, quam petēbat, dare nōlēbat rēx. Ex Lūsitāniā igitur in Hispāniam iter fēcit Columbus; ubi rēx Ferdinandus Isabellaque bellum cum Maurīs gerēbant, nec quisquam advenam libenter audiēbat. Itaque ille, ubi cōgnōvit rēgem et rēginam nōlle ea facere quae spērāverat, ad Galliam versus profectus est; cum autem montēs trānsīret, nūntius est cōsecūtus, quī dixit velle iam Isabellam parāre nāvēs pecūniamque dare. Quā rē auditā, Columbus laetus rediit, nautāsque validōs quaerere coepit; sed paene omnēs, perīculum veritī, cum eō nāvīgāre nōlēbant.

Postrēmō autem ē portū exiit tribus cum nāvibus parvīs, quae Pinta, Nīna, Santaque Mariā appellābantur; cumque

1. quīdam: masc. pl., used as a noun. — rotundam: rotundus, -a, -um, round, or spherical.

4. nec: and . . . not.

5. interpōnī: lit. to lie between.

7. obtinentī: pres. part. modifying rēgī.

10. ubi: (but) there.

11. nec quisquam: and nobody.

12. ubi: temporal conjunction.

13. ea: (neut. pl.) the things.

15. velle: was willing.

16. laetus: gladly, or with joy.

A Latin adj. is often best translated by an adverb or a phrase.

17. veritī: perf. part. of vereor; to be translated as a present, the Latin use being somewhat inexact.

paucōs diēs nāvīgāssēt, ad īnsulās quāsdam pervēnit, in quibus inveniuntur plūrimae avēs, quārum cantus est pulcherrimus. Tum per ignōtum mare fortiter prōgressus est.

LESSON 3

Christopher Columbus (Continued)

Cum multa milia passuum Columbus nāvīgāssēt neque
5 terram vidisset ūllam, nautae vehementer timēre coepē-
runt, quod multa audiverant dē nāvibus, quae longē per
mare Atlanticum prōgressae domum numquam postea redi-
erant; in Hispāniam igitur statim redire volēbant, dux
tamen nōluit. Quārē illī primō habuerunt in animō Co-
10 lumbum etiam in mare iacere; postrēmō autem eōrum
animi irātī ā duce mītigātī sunt.

Ōlim nauta quīdam crēdebāt sē terram vidēre, et omnēs
gaudēbant; nūbem autem viderat ille, nōn terram. Sed
paucīs post diēbus rārum invēnerunt et bācās in marī
15 natantēs, ac Columbus sēnsit sē iam terrae appropinquāre.
Mox noctū ignem quoque in litore vidērunt, ac māne ad
īnsulam pervēnerunt parvam, ubi laetī in harēnam ēgressī
paucōs diēs morātī sunt.

Inde profectus, Columbus aliās quoque īnsulās adiit, in
20 quibus erat ea, quae Cūba appellātur. Gazās tamen inve-
nīre nōn potuit, quās quaerēbat. Putābat enim sē iam ad

1. nāvīgāssēt: *i.e.* nāvīgāvis-
set.

2. plūrimae: see multus.

4. neque: cf. nec, p. 2, l. 4.

6. multa: *many (stories)*.

11. mītigātī sunt: *were calmed*
(mītigō, 1).

13. nūbem: nūbēs, -is, F., *cloud*.

14. paucīs post diēbus: *a few*
days later, lit. *afterward by a*
few days (abl. of degree of
difference).

15. natantēs: pres. part. of
natō. — iam: *at length*.

21. potuit: see the note on pos-
sent, p. 1, l. 13.

Asiam pervēnisse; quārē incolās eārum insulārum, quās adierat, Indōs appellāvit.

LESSON 4

Christopher Columbus (Concluded)

Indī Columbum amābant; isque, cum ad Hispāniam reditūrus esset, in insulā quādā colōniam parvam reliquit. Colōnī tamen iniūriās mox Indis fēcērunt ac brevī ad ūnum ab eīs interfectī sunt.

Interim Columbus ipse domum properābat; subitō autem, cum laetus per mare nāvigāret, tempestāte maximā coortā, nāvēs fluctibus paene complētae sunt. Tum ille scripsit litterās, quās in dōlia conditās in mare iēcit; crēdebāt enim nullam iam esse spem, putābatque dōlia posse ad lītus ventis ferri, cīvēsque suōs ita certiōrēs fieri dē eīs insulis, quās ipse invēnerat. Sed maris violentiam nāvēs sustinuērunt, et Columbus in Hispāniam incolumis pervēnit; ubi rēx et rēgīna eius rēbus gestīs gaudēbant, eumque fēcērunt insulārum praefectum.

Posteā ad Americam Columbus semel atque iterum nāvīgāvit. Rem autem haud fēliciter gessit, inopsque prostrēmō mortuus est. Etiam tum terrās, quās invēnerat, Asiae partem esse crēdebāt.

3. reditūrus esset: *was about to return.*

5. brevī: *i.e. mox.* — ad ūnum: *to a man.*

8. laetus: cf. p. 2, l. 16.

10. dōlia: dōlium, -ī, N., *case.* — conditās: *freely, he placed . . . (and); lit. what?*

12. certiōrēs fieri: *be informed, or learn, lit. be made more certain.* Supply posse with this clause.

13. violentiam: *violentia, -ae, F., force.*

14. incolumis: *for rendering, cf. laetus, l. 8.* — ubi: *there.*

15. eius rēbus gestīs: *in his exploits.*

16. praefectum: *cf. the predicate accusative (Indōs) with appellāvit, l. 2.*

18. inops (-opis, adj.): *in poverty.*

LESSON 5

The Cabots

Interim vir quīdam, nōmine Cabot, ā Britannīā cum nāve parvā nautisque paucis profectus est atque ad Americam pervēnit. Quī nōn solum insulās adiit, sed etiam eam terram, quae nunc Canada appellātur. Postea idem cum filiō
 5 ad Americam iterum nāvigāvit, ac multa milia passuum secundum litus prōgressus, Indōs vīdit multōs. Interim nautae prope insulās quāsdam morābantur, ut piscis cape-
 rent. Quī, cum domum incolumēs redissent, amicis suis multa nārrāvērunt dē rēbus miris, quās viderant; quīn
 10 etiam dīxērunt sē ursās vīdisse in mare prōgredientēs, ut piscis raperent.

Cabot filius posteā omnīs in partēs nāvigāvit, ac diū cōnātus est viam invenire, quā circum Eurōpam nāvigāre atque ita ad Asiam pervenire posset; eam tamen viam
 15 numquam invēnit, neque nunc nōta est. Ōlim, cum iam esset senex neque ipse diūtius nāvigāre posset, dōna magna dīcitur dedisse nautis quibusdam, quōs forte cōgnōverat parvā in nāve ad terrās ignōtās profectūrōs esse; adeō nāvis nautāsque semper amāvit.

1. ā: *from*.

3. quī: *he*. — eam: *the*.

8. quī, cum: (*and*) *when they*.
 — incolumēs: cf. p. 4, l. 14.

9. multa: cf. ea, p. 2, l. 13, and multa, p. 3, l. 6. This noun use of the neuter of adjectives and pronouns is exceedingly frequent in Latin. The English rendering varies with the context.

10. ursās: *ursa*, -ae, *F.*, *bear*.

12. filius: *the younger*.

13. quā: abl. of way by which; cf. quā, p. 1, l. 12.

15. neque: cf. nec, p. 2, l. 4.

16. diūtius: (*any*) *longer*.

17. dīcitur: lit. *he is said*. This personal passive construction is common in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of verbs of saying, thinking, and the like.

18. profectūrōs esse: cf. reditūrus esset, p. 4, l. 3.

LESSON 6

Captain John Smith

Quod colōnī, quī ex Hispāniā in Americam dēductī erant, aurum multum et argentum ibi inveniēbant, Britannī quoque colōnōs quōsdam mīsērunt, quī castra pōnerent eā in terrā, quae Virginia appellātur. Quōs colōnōs Indī mox 5 adortī sunt, sagittisque occidērunt paucōs; castra tamen prope rīpam posita erant, ac nautae ē nāvibus tēla plūrima inmisērunt in hostēs, quī sē celeriter in silvās recipere coāctī sunt.

Brevī autem erat perīculum etiam maius; nam paene 10 omnis cōnsūmptus est cibus, quem colōnī ā Britannīā nāvibus vēxerant. Statim igitur eōrum dux, nōmine Faber, vir fortis, cum scaphā paucisque militibus adversō flūmine longē prōgressus est, ut frūmentum quaereret, quod incolae libenter dabant prō nūgīs quās colōnī sēcum ferēbant.

15 Posteā dux idem, cum iterum prōfectus esset ut inveniret viam, quā ad Asiam nāvēs pervenire possent (omnēs enim iam intellegēbant Americam nō esse Asiae partem), fortiter pugnāns ab Indīs captus est.

LESSON 7

Captain John Smith (Continued)

20 Postrēmō tamen in colōniam incolumis reductus, Faber posteā per lītora omnia iter fēcit; spērābat enim semper

3. pōnerent: cf. the note on possent, p. 1, l. 13.—eā: modifier of terrā: for translation, cf. eam, p. 5, l. 3.

4. quōs: these (adj.).

10. nāvibus: freely, in their ships; strictly, abl. of means.

12. adversō flūmine: up stream; lit. what?

14. nūgīs: nūgae, -ārum, F., trifles.

16. omnēs: everybody; cf. the note on quīdam, p. 2, l. 1. The noun use of the masc. pl. is very frequent.

sē flūmen esse inventūrum, quō Americam trānsire et ita ad Asiam pervenire posset. In itineribus et dux et militēs noctū saepe frīgora maxima ferre cōgēbantur; tum, remōtō ignī et haud procul collocātō, humī iacēre solēbant eōdem locō, ubi ignis modo fuerat. Interdum aquam dulcem nōn habēbant, eōrumque pānis fluctibus corruptus est.

Ōlim in eōs, cum prope litus quoddam nāvigārent, ab incolīs sagittae subitō ex arboribus missae sunt; militēs tamen, cum postea in litore eōsdem Indōs corbulās manibus tenentēs vīdissent, incolās velle frūmentum sibi dare crēdiderunt. Dux autem, insidiās veritus, militēs iussit hostēs prius sonō armōrum terrere; tum, cum Indī perterritī in silvās fūgissent, colōnī ad litus vērunt, et in harēnā dōna posuerunt multa. Quae cum Indī invēnissent, gaudēbant, ac colōnis iam factī amīcī, frūmentum eīs libenter dederunt.

LESSON 8

Captain John Smith (Continued)

Dum haec fiunt, Indī, quī prope colōniam habitābant, colōnōrum cōpiās saepe rapiēbant; quīn etiam interdum

1. esse inventūrum: *would find*.—quō: cf. quā, p. 1, l. 12.

2. et . . . et: *both . . . and*.

3. maxima: for the various renderings of magnus, see the Vocab.—tum: *at such times*.—remōtō: removeō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move*.

4. humī: *on the ground*; locative case.—eōdem locō: the prepositions in and ex are often lacking with locō and locīs.

5. interdum: cf. p. 1, l. 10.—dulcem: dulcis, -is, -e, *fresh*.

6. pānis (-is, M.): *bread*.—

corruptus est: corrumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptus, *spoil*.

9. corbulās: corbula, -ae, F., *basket*.—manibus: for syntax, cf. nāvibus, p. 6, l. 10.

14. quae: *these* (noun).

15. factī amīcī: *freely, becoming friendly* (factī from fiō). English often uses a pres. part. where the perfect would be more exact.

16. haec: *these things*.—fiunt: in connection with dum, the pres. indic. is rendered as an imperfect.

17. rapiēbant: *would steal*; a common meaning of the impf. indic.

arma quoque ē colōniā rapta sunt, dōnec ūnus ex Indīs, qui ea tractāre nesciēbat, ita ipse paene sē interfēcit.

Postrēmō ē Britannīā vēnērunt colōnī novī, quī Fabrō, dē quō suprā dixī, amīcī nōn erant. Ā quibus domum redīre 5 coāctus, numquam posteā ille ad Virgīniam revēnit. Sed per mare Atlanticum saepe navigāvit, atque ōlim pervēnit usque ad terram, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellātur. Ibi nautae, locō idōneō complūris diēs morātī, piscēs cēpērunt multōs, quōs sāle condītōs posteā in Britanniam 10 reportāvērunt. Interim dux parvā in scaphā multa mīlia passuum secundum lītus prōgressus, frūmentum pellēsque ab incolīs emēbat.

Quī, cum dēmum in Britanniam redīre vellet, Indōs complūris in nāvēs accēpit ac sēcum domum redūxit. Quō ubi 15 est perventum omnēsque iam ē nāvibus ēgressī sunt, ūnus ē praepositīs Indōs paucōs sē sequī nāvemque iterum cōnscendere iussit; tum clam ad Hispāniam cum captivīs miseris profectus est. Ibi autem cum Indōs vēndere cōnārētur, sacerdotēs quīdam, quī dē eius cōnsiliō certiōrēs factī 20 erant, ad nāvem statim properāvērunt; ā quibus captivī servātī sunt.

1. ex: *of*.

2. tractāre: (*how*) to handle.

—ipse . . . sē: freely, *his own self*.

4. domum: *i.e.* to England.

5. revēnit: the prefix *re-* often means “back”; cf. reportāvērunt (l. 10), redūxit (l. 14), and re(d)ire (l. 4).

7. usque ad: *as far as*.

8. locō: cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

9. sāle condītōs: *salted down* (condiō, 4, *season*; sāl, sālis, *M., salt*); condītōs modifies quōs.

11. pellēs: *pellis, -is, F., skin, or pelt*.

13. quī, cum: *when . . . he*.

—vellet: *was ready*; for other meanings of the word see the Vocab.

14. in nāvēs accēpit: translate freely. —sēcum: *i.e.* sē + cum. —quō: *there*; lit. *whither*.

15. est perventum: cf. the impersonal passive on p. 1, l. 11, and translate according to the context here. —omnēs: cf. p. 6, l. 16.

16. praepositīs: *praepositus, -ī, M., officer*.

19. certiōrēs factī erant: cf. p. 4, l. 12.



SACERDŌS

Above is shown the statue of a Vestal Virgin found at Rome in the ruins of the Temple of Vesta, a goddess upon whose altar a pure bright fire was always kept burning, and whose public worship was in the hands of virgin priestesses chosen in childhood for a term of thirty years' service. The Vestal Virgins were held in the highest honor, even the consuls yielding them precedence when they appeared in public; and a condemned criminal was saved, if he were but fortunate enough to meet some of them as he was being led away to execution.

LESSON 9

Captain John Smith (Concluded)

Faber interim colōniam in Britanniam Novam dēducere parābat, brevīque cum militibus ac nautis sēdecim ad Americam versus profectus est. Cum autem mare trānsiret, subitō tempestās magna est coorta, ac nāvēs fluctibus paene
5 frāctae sunt; quārē domum redire coāctus est.

Sed paulō post cum unā nāve parvā iterum profectus, multōs diēs ad Americam versus fēliciter nāvigāvit. Tum, pīrātis procul vīsīs, frūstrā effugere cōnātus est. Pīrātae tamen inventī sunt militēs esse, quōs ipse olīm in Eurōpā
10 dūxerat; quī igitur ducem suum veterem volēbant sēcum nāvigāre, is autem ad Americam cursum tenēre māluit. Sed paucīs post diēbus Gallī quīdam, quī per maria omnia praedam quaerēbant, eius nāvem cēpērunt, ipsumque suam nāvem longam coēgērunt cōnscondere. Ibi cum morārētur, eius
15 nautae, quī domum redire iam diū volēbant, clam dedērunt vēla, incolumēsque in Britanniam pervēnērunt. Ubi tamen poenās postea dedērunt cum dēmum redisset Faber, quī cum Gallis diū nāvigāre coāctus erat. Numquam postea ille colōniam dēducere cōnātus est.

2. ad . . . versus: *for*; cf. p. 2, l. 13.

6. paulō post: *a little later*, lit. *afterward by a little*; cf. paucīs post diēbus, p. 3, l. 14. — profectus: cf. the note on factī, p. 7, l. 15.

9. inventī sunt . . . esse: *i.e. proved to be*; lit. what? — Eurōpā: note the case.

14. morārētur: *was detained*.

15. iam diū: in connection with such adverbial words and phrases as iam, iam diū, etc., an imperf. has almost the force of a pluperf. — dedērunt vēla: sc. ventis, *i.e. set sail*.

16. incolumēs: cf. p. 4, l. 14. — ubi: see the note on p. 4, l. 14.

LESSON 10

Pocahontas

Prope colōniam, quam Britannī in Virginiam dēdūxerant, habitābat quīdam rēx Indus, cui erat filia pulchra. Puella, quae Pōcahonta appellābātur, colōnōs amāvit, ōlimque servāverat eum ducem, dē quō suprā multa dixī; nam trāditum est, cum ille ab Indīs captus esset, hostēsque eum interficere vellent, rēgis filiam suum corpus interposuisse. Id tamen multī crēdunt numquam esse factum, Fabrumque postea mentitum esse. Sed frūmentō certē et carne Pōcahonta colōnōs saepe iūvit, et quondam ad oppidum nūntium
10 misit, cum hostēs oppidānōs occidere parārent.

Interdum colōnī, quōrum cōpiae semper parvae erant, fame paene periērunt; quī etiam ōlim, quamquam libenter equōs quoque edēbant, hominēs multī mortuī sunt. Tum, impetum Indōrum timentēs, oppidānī ipsam rapuērunt
15 Pōcahontam mēnsēsque multōs prō obside tenuērunt, ut pater, filiā captā, amīcus esse cōgerētur. Puellam, dum in oppidō morātur, ūnus ex colōnīs amāre coepit. Quī, cum eam in mātirimōnium dūxisset, ad Britanniam cum uxōre est profectus; ubi paulō post Pōcahonta mortua est.

2. cui erat: freely, *who had*; lit. what?

4. multa: *much*; cf. multa, p. 5, l. 9. — trāditum est: *it is related* (trādō is short for trānsdō, lit. *hand over, pass along*).

6. suum: emphatic position, *her own*. When a possessive adj. is employed for clearness merely, it is apt to follow the modified

noun; when it precedes the noun, it is often best rendered as *suum* here.

7. id: *i.e.* the incident. — multi: cf. the note on quīdam, p. 2, l. 1.

15. prō: *as*.

17. morātur: for the force of the tense, see the note on fiunt, p. 7, l. 16.

LESSON 11

Henry Hudson

Hōc ferē tempore Batāvī, quī volēbant viam invenīre, quā circum Eurōpam ad Asiam nāvigārī posset, parāvērunt nāvem, cui erat nōmen Lūna Dīmīdia, et Hudsōnem, virum Britannīcum, ducem fēcērunt.

5 Ille primō circum Eurōpam nāvigāre frūstrā cōnātus, ad Americam deinde profectus est, quod ibi audīverat esse freta, quibus nāvēs in Asiam trānsīre possent. Quō ubi perventum est, multa mīlia passuum secundum lītus nāvigāvit; cumque loca multa explōrāsset, postrēmō pervēnit ad insulam, ubi nunc est oppidum, quod Eborācum Novum appellātur. Hic Indī subitō adortī sunt nautās, quī cum scaphīs portum explōrābant, sagittisque hominem interfēcērunt ūnum.

15 Quō factō, dux duōs Indōs rapuit nāvemque cōnscendere coēgit. Tum insulā relictā, adversō flūmine profectus est; cum autem haud longē nāvigāsset, captīvī ē nāvī sē iēcērunt in aquam, et nandō ad rīpam incolumēs pervēnērunt. Interim nāvis lēniter prōgrediēbātur, moxque in cōspectū erant montēs, quōrum incolae frūmentum cōpiāsque aliās
20 nautīs libenter vēdidērunt.

1. hōc . . . tempore: for syntax, cf. illīs temporibus, p. 1, l. 9.

2. nāvigārī posset: lit. *it could be sailed*; cf. the impersonal passive nāvigātum erat, p. 1, l. 11.

3. Dīmīdia: *Half* (dīmīdius, -a, -um).

7. quō: cf. p. 8, l. 14.

9. cum explōrāsset: *having explored*. For the form of the verb, cf. nāvigāsset, p. 3, l. 1.

14. quō: *this* (noun).

15. adversō flūmine: cf. p. 6, l. 12.

17. nandō: gerund, *by swimming*; the phrase nandō . . . pervēnērunt may be rendered freely "swam."

LESSON 12

Henry Hudson (Continued)

Cum inde diēs paucōs flūmine adversō nāvīgātum esset, dux ipse ē nāvī in ripam ēgressus incolās convēnit, quī libenter sagittās suās frēgērunt omnīs, ut advenae intellegerent sē esse amicōs. Ibi haud diū morātus, Hudsō
5 iterum lēniter prōgressus est; sed postrēmō flūmen invēnit angustius fierī, ac sēnsit sē hāc ad Asiam pervenīre nōn posse. Itaque ad mare rediit, brevīque domum profectus est.

Paucīs post mēnsibus Batāvī nāvēs aliās et hominēs misērunt, quī cum Indīs negōtiārentur; ac posterō annō dux
10 idem, cum ā Britannīā ad Americam iterum profectus esset, mare maximum sub septentriōnibus invēnit, quod nunc eius nōmine appellātur. Ibi mēnsēs multōs hiemāre coactus est. Tum dēmum, cum cibus iam omnīs cōnsūmptus esset, nautae scelerātī, duce in scaphā relictō, in altum vēla dedērunt.

15 Hudsōnem nēmō postea vidit; sed nautae, paucīs āmissīs, incolumēs domum pervēnērunt:—quamquam prīmō fame omnēs paene perierant; paucīs enim avibus exceptīs, nōn habēbant quod ēssent, dōnec in cōnspectum vēnit nāvis, cuius magister eōs frūmentō aliisque rēbus iuvāre potuit.

4. haud diū: freely, *but a short time.*

6. angustius: predicate adj., agreeing with flūmen, l. 5. — hāc: sc. viā; cf. the note on quā, p. 5, l. 13.

9. negōtiārentur: cf. the note on possent, p. 1, l. 13.

10. cum . . . profectus esset: cf. p. 12, l. 9, and the note.

11. mare: bay. — maximum: mighty; absolute use of the superlative. In a similar way, com-

paratives may indicate a high degree in general, without distinctly comparing one thing with another. — sub septentriōnibus: *i.e. toward the north (septentriōnēs, -um, M., the "Great Bear").*

14. altum: the deep (sea).

15. āmissīs: *i.e.* by death.

17. paucīs . . . exceptīs: freely, *with the exception of a few.*

18. quod ēssent: (*anything*) to eat (ēssent from edō). As antecedent for the relative, supply id (acc.).

LESSON 13

Colonization in New England

Paucis post annis Britannii complures, qui apud Batavos diu habitaverant, in Americam cum liberis atque uxoribus emigrare constituerunt. Qui, cum pervenissent ad litus eius terrae, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellatur, impetum
 5 Indorum veriti, legatum, nomine Standisium, cum militibus paucis miserunt, qui loca undique exploraret. Illi igitur multa milia passuum secundum litus progressi sunt, cum navigarent interdiu, noctesque autem in litore agerent.

10 Primo terrae incolas raro viderunt; olim tamen, cum mane proficisci pararent unusque ex militibus omnium arma in scapha iam collocavisset, Indi subito e silva magno clamore eruperunt, sagittisque vulneraverunt paucos. Sed milites statim ad scapham cucurrerunt, ut arma caperent,
 15 hostesque celeriter fugere coacti sunt.

Postrimo ad portum tutum perventum est, ubi tribus ante annis multi habitaverant Indi; qui iam ad unum morbo perierant. Qua de re certiores facti, coloni reliqui quoque ad eum locum venerunt, ibique e navis in litus egressi, dis
 20 egerunt gratias castraque posuerunt. Est in litore etiam nunc saxum, quod Americani semper coluerunt colentque

2. liberis atque uxoribus: sc. suis.

3. qui, cum: cf. p. 5, l. 8.

6. exploraret: note the mood.

8. cum navigarent: translate by a participial phrase.

10. raro: adv., *seldom*.

11. omnium: used as a masc. noun, modifier of arma.

14. ut arma caperent: *i.e. to arm themselves*.

17. ad unum: *utterly*; cf. p. 4. l. 5.

18. qua de re: *i.e. de hac re*.

19. dis: from deus.

21. coluerunt: colō, 3, colui, cultus, *venerate*.



IŪNŌ, RĒGĪNA DEŌRUM

The chief deities worshiped by the Romans were twelve in number: namely, Jupiter, Neptune, Vulcan, Mars, Mercury, Apollo, Juno, Minerva, Vesta, Ceres, Venus, and Diana. Besides these, many minor divinities were recognized.

semper, quod hīc dēmum ē nāvī ēgressi sunt Britanni illi, quī postea maiōrēs peregrinantēs appellāti sunt.

LESSON 14

A Soldier's Courtship

Hieme proximā morbō aut fame colōnī complūrēs periē-
runt, quōrum in numerō erat Standisī quoque uxor. Ille,
5 uxōre mortuā, in mātirimōnium volēbat dūcere quandam
puellam pulchram, cui erat nōmen Prissilla; sed, cum sē
sentīret militem asperum esse, rem ipse tractāre nōluit,
iuvenemque quandam mīsīt, quī puellae patrem convenīret.

Iuvenis, quī forte ipse quoque Prissillam amāre coeperat,
10 amīcō tamen deesse nōlēbat. Quārē maestus profectus est,
lēniterque per lītus ad puellae domum versus ambulāvit.
Quō cum pervēnisset rēsque esset prōposita, pater statim
sē nōn nōlle dīxit. Cum autem iuvenis cum Prissillā ipsā
dē virtūte lēgātī eiusque rēbus gestīs loquerētur, illa diū
15 tacitā audīvit, tum rīdēns: “Nōne prō tē,” inquit, “dic-
tūrus es?” Quā vōce ille vehementer commōtus domum
ad lēgātum rediit. Quī primō amicum verbīs acerbīs

1. quod: conjunction.

2. maiōrēs: as noun, *Fathers*.
— peregrinantēs: *Pilgrim* (*peregrinor*, 1, *travel abroad*).

4. quōrum in numerō: *i.e.* among whom. — Standisī: filius and proper names in -ius and -ium have regularly this short form of the gen.; so also some common nouns in -ium. Accent, Standisī.

6. cum: causal conjunction; cf., however, the note on p. 14, l. 8.

10. maestus: cf. the rendering of *laetus*, p. 2, l. 16.

11. domum: *residence*; with *domum* in this meaning, the preposition cannot be omitted (as in l. 16).

12. quō: cf. the note on p. 8, l. 14. — rēs: (*his*) *errand*.

13. nōn: with nōlle. — cum Prissillā: we would say “to Prissilla.”

14. eius: *i.e.* of Standish. — rēbus gestīs: cf. p. 4, l. 15.

15. nōne: *i.e.* nōn + ne. — dictūrus es: *going to speak*; cf. *reditūrus esset*, p. 4, l. 3.

accēpit, postrēmō tamen sēnsit nōn illius culpā rem ita cecidisse. Itaque paucīs post mēnsibus ā iuvene Prissilla in mātirimōnium ducta est, Standisius autem sibi uxōrem aliam sūmpsit.

LESSON 15

Unrest among the Indians

5 Indī, quī prope colōniam habitābant, paene omnēs inimicī erant, sed vehementer timēbant lēgātum Standisium, dē quō suprà dixī; nam is, dux fortissimus, libentissimē bellum semper gessit, neque umquam pericūm ūllum recūsāvit. Quī tamen nōn erat crūdēlis; ōlim enim, cum ad oppidum
10 Indōrum inimicōrum profectus esset hostēsque vīcisset, trēs Indōs vulnerātōs domum sēcum redūxit, ut eōrum vulnera ibi cūrārentur.

Hōc ferē tempore colōnī alii, ā Britannīā profectī, haud procul condidērunt oppidum alterum. Tum dēmum Indi
15 vehementer commōtī, conciliō convocātō, oppida ambō incendere colōnōsque ipsōs interficere cōstituērunt; sed rēx, quīdam, quī colōnōs amābat, ad Standisium properāvit, eumque dē hostium cōsiliō certiōrem fēcit. Periculō cōgnitō, lēgātus statim cum militibus paucīs ad alterum oppidum
20 profectus est. Ibi Indī, cum vīdissent militēs esse paucōs, arbitrātī sē facile Standisium terrēre posse, eī ostendērunt

1. illius culpā: *through (any) fault of his, i.e. of the iuvenis (culpa, -ae, F.). — rem: the affair.*

8. neque umquam: *and . . . never; cf. the rendering of nec quisquam, p 2, l. 11. In translation, nec (neque) should always, if possible, be resolved thus into connective and negative.*

15. conciliō: *contrast cōsiliō, l. 18.*

18. periculō cōgnitō: *freely, having learned of the danger. A literal rendering of cōgnitus in the abl. absol. construction would often be awkward.*

21. arbitrātī: *cf. the use of veritī, p. 2, l. 17.*

sicās, ac verbōrum quoque contumēliās adiūnxērunt. Sed paucīs post diēbus, cum quīdam Pecuot cum lēgātō loquerētur, is, signō militibus datō, Pecuotis sicam subitō rapuit, eāque ipsum interfecit; simul militēs, comitēs Pecuotis adortī, eōs omnēs occidērunt. Quō factō, Indi reliqui perterriti fūgērunt, nec diūtius dē caede colōnōrum cōgītābant ūllī.

LESSON 16

Old Friends become Enemies

Eī rēgī, ā quō colōnī dē suō periculō cōnsiliisque Indōrum certiorēs factī sunt, duo erant filii, quī quoque colōnīs diū
10 amici erant. Patre autem mortuō, iuvenēs suspicārī coepērunt bene ēmissee colōnōs, quibus silvās Indi vēndiderant; tum novam religiōnem civēs suōs amplectī haud libenter vīdērunt: itaque mox dē bellō cōgītābant.

Quod ubi cōgnitum est, ē colōniā militēs missī sunt, qui
15 frātre maiōrem, nōmine Alexandrum, prō obside in oppidum sēcum redūcerent. Ille autem ibi morbō affectus est gravī; cumque postea domum redisset, apud suōs brevī mortuus est. Quō factō, Alexandrum venēnō periisse arbitrātī, Indi sicās secūrēsque suās acuere statim coepērunt.

1. verbōrum . . . contumēliās: *i.e. insulting words*; lit. what? —adiūnxērunt: adiungō, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *add.*

2. quīdam: *a certain.*

3. is: *i.e. Standish.*

4. eā: note the case.—ipsum: *him.* The intensive pronoun points a contrast between Pecuot and his companions (comitēs).

5. quō: cf. p. 12, l. 14.

6. nec diūtius: *and no longer*; cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.—caede: *a massacre.*

10. patre . . . mortuō: translate by a clause introduced by "when" or "after."

11. bene ēmissee: *i.e. had made a good bargain*; lit. what?

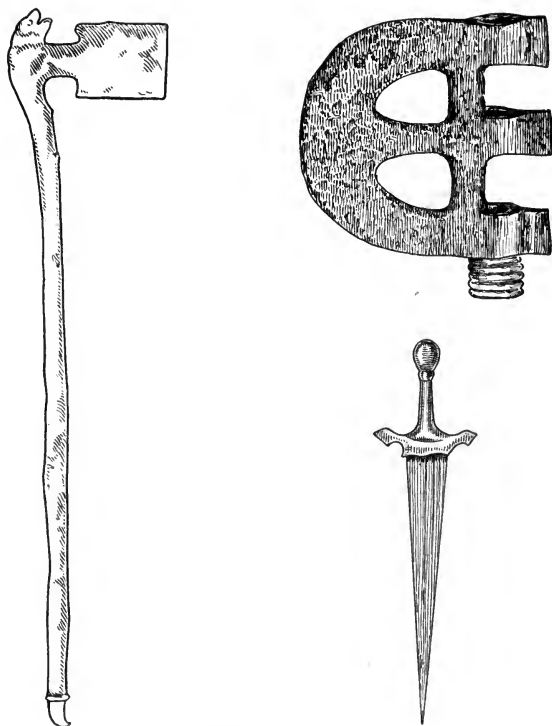
12. tum: *furthermore.*—civēs suōs: subject of the infin.

13. cōgītābant: note the tense.

14. quōd: cf. quō, l. 5.

17. gravī: modifying morbō. —suōs: as noun, *his own people.*

19. acuere: acuō, 3, acuī, acūtus, *sharpen.* This proceeding, of course, portended war.



SECŪRĒS ET SĪCA

Two ancient battle-axes are shown above, one complete, the other lacking a handle. The dagger was found in a tomb in Etruria.

Tum dēnum oppidānī alterum frātrem, quī Philippus appellābatur, ad colōniam dēdūxērunt, eumque coēgērunt arma omnia trādere, quae ipse comitēsque ferēbant; nec vērō dīmīsērunt hominem, dōnec pollicitus est sē reliqua
5 quoque arma trāditūrum, quae domī Indī habēbant.

LESSON 17

The Outbreak of King Philip's War

Philippus, quī patre et frātre mortuīs iam ipse rēx erat, irātus domum profectus, Indōs ad arma vocāvīt. Quī eum libenter secūtī sunt; quīn etiam ōlim quendam cīvem suum interfēcērunt, quod rēgis cōnsilia colōnīs prōdiderat.

10 Complūra iam erant colōnōrum oppida; sed Indī primō tantum villīs admōvērunt ignīs bovēsque rapuērunt: nam, ā sacerdotibus monitī, hominem occidere nūllum ausī sunt, dōnec ā colōnīs ūnus ex ipsōrum numerō vulnerātus est. Tum dēnum, omnibus oppidīs oppugnātīs, caedēs maxima
15 est facta, ac colōnī miserī, aliī cum aquam peterent, aliī cum ā villīs in oppida fugerent, undique occisī sunt.

Ōlim hostēs, cum in castellum quoddam impetum fēcissent sagittāsque ārdentēs misissent in tēctum, postrēmō ipsī quoque castellō ignem admovēre cōnātī sunt. Quā rē
20 animadversā, colōnī, quī sē fortiter multās hōrās dēfende-

4. hominem: *the man.*

5. trāditūrum: sc. esse.—
domī: *at home*; for the case, cf. humī, p. 7, l. 4.

8. suum: *of theirs.*

12. hominem: standing in contrast to villīs and bovēs of the preceding clause.

13. ipsōrum: *their own.*

15. aliī . . . aliī: *some . . . others.* — cum: *as.*

17. hostēs, cum: *when the enemy.* Note the changed order of the English. — in: *upon.*

19. ipsī: modifying castellō.—
quā rē: *this.*

rant, omnem salūtis spem iam dēpōnēbant; sed subitō imber coortus est maximus, quō ignēs sunt extinctī. Quārē Indī cōnātū dēsistere coactī sunt.

LESSON 18

A Remarkable Deliverance

Hōc ferē tempore aliō in oppidō latēbat imperātor quīdam, 5 quī ē Britannīā paulō ante fūgerat, quod rēx Britannōrum eum volēbat interficere. Homō scilicet nōlēbat oppidānōs cōgnōscere sē ibi latēre. Sed ōlim, cum colōnī in templō adessent omnēs, tūtō sē ē latebris exīre posse crēdēbat; itaque ē fenestrā prōspēxit. Prīmō nēminem vidit; tum subitō 10 animadvertit multōs Indōs per agrōs clam properantēs, ut oppidum oppugnārent.

Quibus ille rēbus vehementer commōtus, ex aedibus statim ērūpit ac colōnōs ad arma vocāvit. Quī cum celeriter ē templō cucurrissent, advenā duce cum Indīs fortiter 15 pugnāvērunt, hostēsque postrēmō in silvās fugere coactī sunt.

Imperātor interim, postquam Indōs fugere intellēxit, ad latebrās statim sē recēpit, nec postea ā colōnīs invenīrī potuit. Quī igitur crēdidērunt ducem ē caelō ā dīs missum 20 esse, quī sē adiuvāret, sicut multīs ante annīs Castor et Pollūx ōlim subitō adfuērunt in aciē auxiliumque Rōmānis

1. dēpōnēbant: note the tense.
— imber (-bris, m.): *shower*.

3. cōnātū dēsistere: *give up* (lit. *desist from*) *the attempt*.

6. homō: cf. *hominem*, p. 20, l. 4.

12. quibus . . . rēbus: transl. as singular (cf. *quā rē*, p. 20, l. 19).

13. cum . . . cucurrissent: cf. the note on p. 14, l. 8.

14. advenā duce: abl. absol., lit. *the stranger (being) leader*; transl. freely.

18. invenīrī: note the last letter of the word.—potuit: for the translation, cf. the note on *possent*, p. 1, l. 13.

19. quī: cf. the rendering of quī in the note on p. 5, l. 3.—ducem: *a leader*.

tulērunt, cum illi hōrās multās pugnāssent cum hostibus, neque eōs in fugam dare potuissent.

LESSON 19

Philip finds Allies

Dum haec geruntur, Indi quīdam longinquī, quibus erat castellum maximum, armīs aliisque rēbus Philippum iuvāre
5 coepērunt. Quō cōgnitō, colōnī, quamquam iam hiems erat, id castellum statim oppugnāre cōstituērunt; nam putābant hanc quoque gentem primā aestāte bellum gerere parāre, cōsiliaque hostium ipsī praeoccupāre volēbant.

Itaque viā nivālī cum exercitū validō profecti, per silvās
10 ad castellum iter fēcērunt. Ibi ācerrimē est pugnātum, ac colōnī multī interfectī sunt; castellum tamen expugnātum est, Indōrumque cōpiae omnēs ignī sunt cōsūmptae: quibus rēbus factis, colōnī vulnerātōs sēcum ferentēs domum lēniter sē recēpērunt.

Hōc dētrīmentō vehementer commōtī, Indi iam undique
15 convēnērunt, oppidaque colōnōrum oppugnāre coepērunt singula. Subitō veniēbant in cōspectum; tum, colōnīs occīsīs villisque incēnsīs, celeriter in silvās sē recipiēbant, cum interim militēs, quī arma graviōra ferēbant, nullō
20 modō cōsequī poterant. Itaque diū colōnī miserī undique

3. dum, etc.: cf. p. 7, l. 16.

5. quō: neuter.—cōgnitō: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 18.

7. primā: *the early*, lit. *the first (part of)*.

8. ipsī: may be omitted in translation.

9. viā: for syntax, cf. quā, p. 5, l. 13.—nivālī: nivālis, -is, -e, snowy.

10. ācerrimē est pugnātum: freely, *a desperate battle was fought*; lit. *what?*

13. vulnerātōs: as noun, *the wounded*.—ferentēs: nom. case.

17. singula: modifying oppida.—veniēbant: for the translation, cf. the note on rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17.

19. cum: *while*.

20. cōsequī: sc. eōs (*i.e.* Indōs).

interfecti sunt; Standisius enim iam pridem mortuus erat: sed postrēmō dux alius inventus est, quī fēliciter cum Indīs bellum gerere sciēbat.

LESSON 20

Captain Church

Cercās, quī iam dux colōnōrum factus est, nōn modo cum
 5 hostibus fēliciter bellum gerere sciēbat, sed etiam Indōs
 interdum sociōs sibi asciscere potuit. Quō cōnsiliō olīm
 profectus, ad quandam gentem pervēnit haud longinquam,
 cuius rēginæ diū fuerat ipse amīcus; quārē spērābat eius
 cīvibus facile sē persuādēre posse, ut colōnōs adiuvārent.
 10 Ibi tamen ab Indīs impetus ācerrimus in Cercam eiusque
 comitēs facta est; quī igitur in palūde coacti sunt latēre,
 dōnec in scaphā vērunt milītēs complūrēs, quī eōs ex
 periculō ēriperent.

Cercās, quamquam cōnsilium tūm perficere nōn potuerat,
 15 convenire tamen rēginam iterum cōnārī cōstituit. Itaque
 paucis post mēnsibus ūnō cum milite Indisque tribus pro-
 fectus, in eiusdem gentis finēs dēnuō iter fēcit; quō ubi
 est perventum, comitibus in scaphā relictis, ad rēginam ipse
 prōgressus est. Cum eā dum loquitur, Indī multī, quī per

3. gerere: cf. the use of the
 infn. with *nesciēbat*, p. 8, l. 2.

4. Cercās: gen. *Cercae*, etc.
 — modo: the adv., *only*.

5. etiam: *also*.

6. sociōs: (*as*) *allies*. — cōn-
 siliō: *design*.

8. rēginæ: dat. case.—ipse:
he. — eius: *i.e.* the queen's.

9. persuādēre: *persuade*, lit.
make (it) agreeable (hence the dat.

cīvibus). — posse: replacing the
 fut. infn., which is lacking in this
 verb.

14. Cercās, quamquam: cf. the
 note on *hostēs*, cum, p. 20, l. 17.

15. convenire: dependent on
 cōnārī.

17. dēnuō: *i.e.* *iterum*. — quō:
 cf. p. 8, l. 14.

19. cum: preposition. — per:
around in.

herbam latuerant, subitō armātī exsiluērunt. Quī tamen, cum intellēxissent Cercam minimē esse territum, humi tum sēdērunt conciliōque habitō polliciti sunt sē colōnōs adiūtūrōs in bellō, quod illi cum Philippō gerēbant.

LESSON 21

The Death of Philip

- 5 Cercās cum hīs sociis suisque militibus iam omnēs in partis iter fēcit per silvās, et undique hōstes in fugam dedit. Quārē postrēmō Philippus ipse paucis cum comitibus per vallis multa mīlia passuum in palūdēs longinquās fugere coāctus est; numquam enim colōnīs sē dēdere cō-
- 10 stituerat: quīn etiam ōlim, cum quīdam ex eius amicis dicere ausus esset pācem cum eīs faciendam esse, rēx irātus hominem suā manū occīdit. Cuius rei acerbitāte commōtus, frāter mortuī statim ad colōnōs perfūgit eōsque certiōrēs fēcit dē palūde, ubi Philippus tum latēbat.
- 15 Itaque dux colōnōrum, quī multōs diēs frūstrā quaesiverat rēgem modoque domum redierat ut uxōrem cōsōlārētur, iterum celeriter profectus est, militēsque suōs prope illam palūdem sine morā instrūxit. Quā rē animadversā, Philippus eiusque comitēs per vallēs longius fugere cōnātī sunt;
- 20 rēx vērō infēlix, interceptus ā militibus quī in silvā collocātī

1. quī tamen, cum: *but when*
 . . . they; cf. quī, cum, p. 8,
 l. 13.

2. humi: cf. p. 7, l. 4. — tum:
 may be omitted in translation.

5. suis: *his own*; cf. suum,
 p. 11, l. 6, and the note.

10. quīdam: *a certain one*.

12. hominem: cf. p. 20, l. 4.
 —suā: cf. suis, l. 5. —rei: for

the various meanings of rēs, see
 the Vocab.—acerbitāte: acerbitās,
 -ātis, F., *harshness*.

13. mortuī: *of the dead*
 (*man*); part., used as a noun, masc.
 sing.

16. modo: (*but*) *just*.

18. quā rē: cf. p. 20, l. 19.

20. vērō: *i.e. tamen*. — infēlix
 (-icis, adj.): *ill-starred*.

erant, ā frātre eiusdem Indi interfectus est, quem ipse occiderat. Caput Philippī secūrī abscīsum colōnī sēcum domum tulērunt; ubi suprā portam positum est, ut omnēs vidērent rēgem rē vērā mortuum esse.

LESSON 22

End of the War

5 Quō dētrīmentō perterritus lēgātus Philippī, quī paucīs cum comitibus ē palūde effūgerat, in silvīs procul latēbat. Quem Cercās diū frūstrā quaesivī; sed postrēmō Indum senem cēpit et puellam, quōs viam ostendere coēgit: quō modō in lēgātī castra subitō perventum est.

10 Ibi Cercās, quamquam comitēs perpaucōs sēcum habēbat, arma Indōrum, quae humī collocāta erant, audācter rapuit. Quō factō, lēgātus magnā vōce: "Captus sum," inquit. Cercās vērō: "Ubi est cēna? nam vēnī ut vobīscum cēnārem." Tum lēgātus: "Equīnam carnem māvīs," inquit,
15 "an būbulam?" Quō auditō, Cercās scīlicet dixit sē malle būbulam.

Carne sine morā cōsūptā, reliquī (noctū enim impetus factus erat) mox humī iacēbant sōpītī; sed Cercās et lēgātus diū vigilābant. Postrēmō Indus surrēxit et silentiō ēgres-

2. abscīsum: agreeing with caput.

3. suprā: preposition, *over*.

4. rē vērā: *in very fact* (vērus, -a, -um, lit. *true, or actual*).

5. lēgātus: *lieutenant*.

7. quem: *him*.

8. senem: *aged* (from senex).

10. perpaucōs: the prefix *per-* is intensive.

12. magnā: *i.e. loud*.

13. Cercās vērō: *sc. inquit*.

14. equīnam: equīnus, -a, -um, (*of*) horse.—māvīs: what form of mālō?

15. an: conjunction, *or*.—būbulam: būbulus, -a, -um, (*of*) cow.

19. Indus: *the Indian*.—silentiō: *abl., used as adv.*

sus est; quārē alter crēdēbat eum exīsse ut arma alia sūmeret. Brevī autem aderat lēgātus manibus ferēns insīgnia quae quondam Philippus gesserat. “Haec nunc tua sunt,” inquit, insīgniaque ante Cercae pedēs humī posuit. Ita
5 bellum cōnfectum est.

LESSON 23

William Penn and the Friends

Dum haec in Britannīā Novā geruntur, in aliās Americae partēs ex Eurōpā veniēbant colōnī multī; in quibus erant complūrēs, quī sē Amīcōs appellābant. Cuidam virō clārō, quī hanc religiōnem erat amplexus, rēx Britannōrum tum
10 magnam pecūniam dēbēbat; quod aes aliēnum ut solveret, in Americā prōvinciam novam hōc ferē tempore cōstituit, virumque illum lēgātum fēcit; quae prōvincia ē nōmine lēgātī Pennsylvēnia appellāta est.

Lēgātus, quod religiō Amīcōrum gentibus Eurōpae grāta
15 nōn erat, colōnōs plūrīmōs statim ad Pennsylvēniam praemisit, paucisque post mēnsibus in prōvinciam ipse profectus est; ubi urbem condidit, quae Philadelphia appellātur. Propter religiōnem Amīcī crēdunt bellum gerere nefās esse, atque omnibus cum hominibus cōmiter vīvere volunt; itaque

1. alter: *the other* (*i.e.* Church).

2. aderat: *was back* (*again*).
— manibus: for syntax, cf. *nāvibus*, p. 6, l. 10.— insīgnia: *trappings* (*insigne, -is, N.*).

3. gesserat: *had worn*.— tua: tuus, -a, -um, *yours*.

6. dum haec, etc.: cf. p. 7, l. 16.

7. veniēbant: note the tense.
— in: *among*.

10. magnam: (*a*) *large* (*sum*

of).— dēbēbat: *dēbeō*, 2, -uī, -itus, *owe*.— quod: *this* (*adj.*).— ut: the acc. preceding belongs to this purpose clause.

11. cōstituit: *established*.

12. lēgātum: *governor*.— ē: *freely, after*.

14. grāta: *freely, popular* (*with*); lit. *what?*

17. ubi: *there*.

18. nefās esse: *that it is a crime* (*nefās*, indeclinable noun).

per multōs annōs continuōs in prōvinciā erat pāx, etiam cum lēgātus ille mortuus esset.

Dē cōmitāte lēgātī multa nārrantur; quīn etiam trāditum est illum, cum ōlīm per prōvinciam iter faceret, parvam
5 puellam vīdisse ad templum euntem, eamque in ipsius equō positam ad templum ita dēdūxisse.

LESSON 24

Nathaniel Bacon in Virginia

Dum in Britannīā Novā bellum gerit Philippus, in Vir-
giniā quoque Indī impetūs saepe in colōnōs faciēbant, mul-
tōsque agricolās, quī procul ab oppidīs habitābant, cum
10 cruciātū occidērunt. Quō periculō commōtī, colōnī multa
mīlia passuum nūntiōs ad caput prōvinciae misērunt, quī
lēgātum ōrārent, ut mitteret militēs, quī hostīs coercērent.
Lēgātō autem nullō modō persuādēri potuit ut colōnōs ad-
iuvāret, quod cum Indīs ipse negōtiābātur nec quaestum
15 dīmittere volēbat; quīn etiam iuvenis quīdam, nōmine Bēcō,
quī ā Britannīā tribus ante annīs in prōvinciam vēnerat,
cum dixisset sē velle in Indōrum finis dūcere colōnōs pau-
cōs, quī iam ipsī arma cēperant, ā lēgātō domī est iussus
manēre.

20 Iuvenis autem, sine morā ad castra colōnōrum clam pro-

1. per: freely, for. — con-
tinuōs: continuus, -a, -um, con-
secutive. — cum: after.

3. multa: cf. p. 5, l. 9. — trā-
ditum est: cf. p. 11, l. 4.

5. euntem: from eō. — eam:
her. — ipsius: his own.

6. positam: part. (from pōnō),
agreeing with eam.

11. caput: capital.

13. persuādēri potuit: lit. could
it be made agreeable; cf. persuā-
dēre, p. 23, l. 9.

15. volēbat: cf. velle, p. 2,
l. 15.

17. cum: translate much earlier
in the English sentence.

18. ipsī: on their own mo-
tion, i.e. without waiting for
the governor to act.

fectus, cum primum in eorum conspectum venit summō assensū omnium dux factus est. Quī igitur, quamquam sciēbat lēgātum postea irātum sē fortasse interfectūrum, in finis tamen Indōrum cōpiās dūxit, hostēsque in fugam undique dedit. Quod ubi est auditum, lēgātus ex oppidō celeriter profectus est, ut Bēcōnem caperet suppliciumque dē eō sūmeret, quod iniussū suō bellum cum Indīs gereret.

LESSON 25

Nathaniel Bacon (Continued)

Brevī autem ad caput prōvinciae lēgātus celeriter redire est coactus; nūntiātum enim est oppidānōs, quōs domi reliquerat quīque iuveni duci amicissimi erant, rēs novās ibi agitāre. Quibuscum lēgātus tum pācem fēcit; postquam vērō Bēcō dēmum ē bellō longinquō domum rediit, colōnī, lēgātum adhūc esse irātum arbitrātī, noctēs diēsque ducis cārī aedēs custodiēbant; eumque, cum paulō post decuriō factus esset, multī comitēs armātī ad oppidum secūtī sunt. Ibi tamen lēgātus, quī quoque cōpiās coegerat, Bēcōnem statim rapuit, mox autem ab oppidānīs irātīs dimittere coactus est. Sed iuvenis, paucis post diēbus certior factus

1. cum primum: *i.e. as soon as.*

2. omnium: as (masc.) noun, modifying assensū. — quī: cf. p. 5, l. 3.

3. irātum: *in (his) anger.* — fortasse: adv., *perhaps.* — interfectūrum: sc. esse.

4. cōpiās: (*his*) troops.

5. quod: *this* (noun).

6. supplicium: supplicium, -ī, N., *punishment.*

7. dē: lit. *from.* supplicium sūmere is the converse of poenās dare.

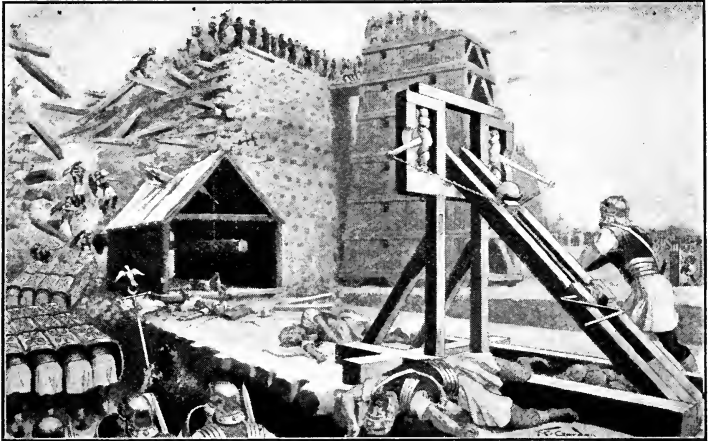
10. iuveni: here as adjective. — rēs novās: *revolution*; lit. what?

11. agitāre: agitō, I, *plan.* — quibuscum: cf. sēcum, p. 8, l. 14.

13. arbitrātī: cf. the use of veritī, p. 2, l. 17. — noctēs diēsque: *night and day.*

14. decuriō (-ōnis, M.): *member of the legislature.*

16. coegerat: *had called together.*



BALLISTA

Ancient "artillery" was not very formidable, as may be seen from the above illustration, which gives a modern artist's conception of an attack upon a walled town. Roman "cannon" were simply huge catapults, some of which threw stones or masses of metal, others projected heavy darts.

lĕgātum parāre sē iterum in custōdiam dare, clam noctū fūgit ex oppidō, nec posterō diē ab inimicīs suīs invenīrī potuit.

Colōnī scilicet undique libenter convēnērunt, ut ducem cārū adiuvārent; isque iam mēnsēs multōs, modo cum
5 Indīs modo cum lĕgātō, fēliciter bellum gessit. Ōlim, cum obsidēret urbem, quod erat caput prōvinciae, ballistāsque circum mūrōs collocāre vellet, uxōres inimicōrum ē praediīs proximīs dēductas ante militēs suōs posuisse dicitur, ut sine periculō suōrum opus perficerētur.

LESSON 26

Nathaniel Bacon (Concluded)

10 Lĕgātus, cum eā in urbe multōs diēs obsessus esset, postrēmō cum comitibus omnibus nāvis cōnscondit, quae in flūmine propinquō ad ancoram cōnsistēbant, ac sine morā profectus est, ut auxilium peteret. Quō factō, Bēcō, quī sentiēbat lĕgātum mox cum sociīs esse reditūrum, ur-
15 bem statim incendit; ipse autem, labōribus periculisque frāctus, paulō post mortuus est.

Tum eius comitēs, cum intellexerent lĕgātum solĕre inimicōs etiam mortuōs contumēliis afficere, corpus ducis cārī tulērunt ad flūmen et in aquam mersērunt; quārē lĕgātus,
20 cum redisset ad urbem amicōsque Bēcōnis multōs interfēcisset, ipsiūs iuvenis corpus invenīre nōn potuit.

2. invenīrī: note the last letter of the word.

4. modo . . . modo: *at one time . . . at another.*

6. quod: relative, agreeing with the predicate noun.

8. dicitur: cf. p. 5, l. 17, note.

9. suōrum: *to (lit. of) his men.*

10. lĕgātus, cum: cf. hostēs, cum, p. 20, l. 17.

17. cum intellexerent: cf. the note on p. 14, l. 8.—solĕre: cf. solēbant, p. 7, l. 4.

18. mortuōs: *(when) dead.*

19. mersērunt: mergō, 3, mersi, mersus, *bury, lit. sink.*

20. multōs: *many (of).*

Paucis post annis ille legatus pessimus quoque poenas dedit; nam a rege domum revocatus, summam ignominiam affectus ibi mortuus est. Interim Virginia reliquaeque provinciae paulatim validiores fiebant. Sed antequam de bello loquor, quod postea a colonis cum Britannis gestum est, quaedam dicenda sunt de puero, qui imperator summus Americanorum futurus erat.

LESSON 27

The Boyhood of George Washington

Hic puer, qui Vasingto appellabatur, in Virginia natus est sexaginta ferme annis post bellum, quod cum legato eius provinciae gesserat Baco ille, de quo modo dixi. Puer erat frater maior, qui tribunus militum factus ad bellum abierat, quod Britannis cum Hispanis tum gerabant eis in insulis, ad quas Columbus primum nave appulit.

Vasingto, postquam frater ad exercitum profectus est, de bello saepe cogitabat; cumque ludabant pueri ac simulabant se esse milites, semper erat ille imperator. Postea vero, puer magnus et validus factus, celerrime dicitur currere potuisse neque equum timuisse ullum.

Frater iam volebat Vasingtonem nautam fieri, mater autem noluit; itaque ille domi aliquamdiu mansit et didicit omnia, quae ibi in ludo tradebantur. Sed paucis post an-

4. *fiabant*: note the tense.
6. *quaedam*: (neut. pl.) *something*.

7. *futurus erat*: *was destined to be*; cf. p. 4, l. 3, and p. 16, l.

15.

8. *natus est*: cf. p. 1, l. 1.

9. *post*: here preposition.

16. *imperator*: pred. nom.

17. *vero*: *moreover*.—*et*: omit in translation.—*factus*: render by a clause introduced by "when."
—*dicitur*: cf. p. 30, l. 8.

21. *omnia*: *everything*.—*ludo*: *ludus*, -i, M., *school*.—*tradebantur*: *i.e. was taught*; lit. *what*?

nīs vir quīdam, cui erat maximum praedium longinquum, hōminem condūcere voluit, quī terminōs praediī suī cōstitueret; ac Vasingtō, quī hanc quoque artem didicerat, ab eō conductus in praedium missus est.

LESSON 28

Experiences on the Frontier

5 In praediō, quod instar prōvinciae erat, habitābant agricolae paucī, at multī Indī. Hīc Vasingtō mēnsēs multōs per silvās et montēs longē iter fēcit, ac saepe equō vectus rīvōs et flūmina trānsiit; noctū autem solēbat sub caelō prope ignem humī iacēre, quod casās colōnōrum nōn amābat.
10 Ōlim cum ita sōpītus iacēret, subitō ignis in foenum cecidit, ex quō lectus eius factus erat; quō ex periculō ipse tamen servātus est ab agricolā quōdam, quī tum vigilābat.

Trēs annōs in praediō morātus est Vasingtō, ibique mōrēs Indōrum cōgnōscere coepit; quārē, ubi domum ūndēviginti
15 annōs nātus rediit, ā lēgātō Virginiae tribūnus militum factus est: nam Virginiā tōtā reliquīsque prōvinciis colōnī arbitrābantur bellum cum Gallis mox gerendum esse. Britannī enim multī iam trānsierant montēs cōsēderantque in vallibus, quae a Gallis prius explōrātae erant; quibus rēbus

2. terminōs: terminus, -ī, M., boundary.

3. hanc . . . artem: *i.e.* of surveying.

6. hīc: the adverb.

8. autem: *moreover*.

9. humī: cf. p. 7, l. 4 — amābat: *fancy*; for other meanings of this word, see the Vocab.

10. foenum: foenum, -ī, N., straw.

11. ex quō: (*out*) of which. — quō ex periculō: for word order, cf. eā in terrā, p. 6, l. 3.

14. ūndēviginti annōs nātus: at nineteen years of age, lit. *having been born nineteen years*.

15. tribūnus militum: a major.

16. Virginiā tōtā: *throughout all Virginia*. The prep. in is often omitted when the abl. is modified by tōtus.

Galli commōtī, cum hanc regiōnem dimittere nōllent, castella complūra ibi pōnēbant, quae Britannōs arcērent.

LESSON 29

A Dangerous Mission

Quamquam spēs pācis iam paene sublāta erat, lēgātus Virginiae cōstituit tamen nūntium mittere, sī ūllō modō
5 rēs sine bellō compōnī possent. Itaque Vasingtō, sine morā dēlēctus quī hanc rem difficilem tractāret, paucīs cum comitibus per silvās fortiter profectus est; cumque montēs quoque trānsisset, Indīs quibusdam ad concilium vocātīs persuāsit ut ad Gallōrum castra sē sequerentur.

10 Quō ubi perventum est, Gallī nūntium cōmiter accēpērunt, respondērunt tamen sē numquam nisi bellō coāctōs ex illīs finibus discessūrōs. Quārē Vasingtō, quī Gallōrum cōpiās maximās summā sollicitūdine animadverterat, domum statim properāre coepit; cum vērō ad montēs per
15 ventum esset, impedimentīs relictīs, ūnō cum comite et duce Indō etiam celerius prōgressus est.

Via scilicet erat ipsa periculōsa (nam hiems iam erat): alterum autem fuit periculum maius; colōnīs enim inimicus erat dux. Quī ōlim, cum advesperāsceret, tēlum subitō

1. cum . . . nōllent: translate by a participial phrase.

2. pōnēbant: note the tense.— arcērent: note the mood.

4. sī: (*if*) *perchance*.

5. compōnī: compōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus, *settle*.

6. tractāret: note the mood.

8. Indīs: cf. the note on persuādēre, p. 23, l. 9.— vocātīs: modifier of Indīs.

11. nisi: introducing the part. coāctōs.

13. cōpiās: *stores*, or *supplies*.— sollicitūdine: sollicitūdō, -inis, F., *anxiety*.

14. vērō: *and*.

16. duce: *guide*.

18. alterum: *another*; contrast the commoner meaning of alter on p. 34, l. 1.— colōnīs: construe with inimicus.

in Vasingtōnem mīsit. Quō factō, colōnus alter Indum interficere volēbat. At Vasingtō, quī tēlō vulnerātus nōn erat, hominem discēdere incolumem passus est; iam autem nōn solum interdiū sed noctū quoque iter faciendum 5 arbitrābātur, quod periculum sentiēbat maximum esse.

LESSON 30

A Dangerous Mission (Continued)

Paulō post ad flūmen magnum perventum est; quod cum rate trānsirent, Vasingtō forte in aquam frigidam cecidit, unāque cum comite in insulā parvā morārī coactus est, dōnec diēs postera illūxit: tum dēmum per glaciem, 10 quae in flūmine natābat, summō cum periculō ad rīpam alteram ambō vērunt. Deinde, equō ab Indīs emptō, facilius fēcērunt iter, et postrēmō incolumēs domum pervērunt. Ubi lēgātus, cum dē pertināciā Gallōrum certior factus esset, molestē ferēs illōs tam audācter respondiisse, 15 Vasingtōnem iussit militēs trāns montēs dūcere ad castella eīdem in locīs pōnenda, ē quibus ipse modo redierat.

Interim colōnī aliī, ē prōvinciā clam per montēs perfectī, in illis regiōnibus longinquīs locum quendam, castrīs maximē idōneum, audācter occupāvērunt. Quī vērō brevī 20 ā Gallis sē dēdere coactī sunt; nam Vasingtō, quamquam iam cōgēbat cōpiās atque intellegēbat omnia sibi esse faciēnda

1. in: *at.*

7. rate: *ratis, -is, F., raft*; for syntax, cf. *nāvibus*, p. 6, l. 10.

10. in: *upon the surface of.* — *natābat*: cf. *natantēs*, p. 3, l. 15.

11. ab: *from.*

12. *facilius*: *i.e. more comfortably.*

13. ubi: cf. *ubi*, p. 4, l. 14.

14. *illōs . . . respondiisse*: *that they had replied.*

15. *ad castella . . . pōnenda*: *to establish forts.*

16. *quibus*: the antecedent is *locīs*.

21. *sibi*: dat. case, this being the regular agency construction with the gerundive. The whole

ut hīc locus dēfenderētur, cīvibus tamen suīs satis mātūrē auxilium ferre nōn potuit.

LESSON 31

The Beginning of the French and Indian War

At paucīs post diēbus, per loca aspera summō labōre prōgressus, in hostium finēs pervēnit Vasingtō, castraque sibi parva posuit. Deinde paulō longius profectus explorātōrēs cēpit paucōs; tum autem certior factus Gallōs Indōsque adesse plūrimōs, iterum sē in castra recēpit. Quō factō Galli, cum sociīs Indīs celeriter cōsecūtī, in castra impetum fēcērunt ācerrimum; sed postrēmō, colōnis multās hōrās frūstrā oppugnātis, ē castrīs Vasingtōnem cum armīs eā condiciōne exīre passī sunt, ut exercitum ex hīs finibus statim redūceret. Ille igitur invītus domum iter facere coāctus est.

Posterō autem annō ē Britannīā legiōnēs complūrēs misae sunt ad Gallōs expellendōs ex eīs locīs, unde illī modo Vasingtōnem discēdere coēgerant. Imperātor factus erat vir Britannicus, nōmine Braddoc, dux fortis, quī tamen cum Indīs bellum gerere nesciēbat. Crēdēbat vērō sē omnia scire, neque ā Vasingtōne aut reliquīs colōnis sē monērī volēbat; quārē, cum ad bellum profectus esset, quamquam multa milia passuum per viās periculōsās silvāsque maximās iter legiōnibus erat faciendum, explorātōrēs praemittere

phrase may be rendered freely that he must exert himself to the utmost for the defense, etc.

1. suīs: modifier of cīvibus.

8. Indīs: here as adj.

10. eā condiciōne . . . ut: on these terms, that.

12. invītus: cf. the note on laetus, p. 2, l. 16.

14. ad Gallōs expellendōs: purpose clause; cf. the similar phrase on p. 34, l. 15.

17. gerere: cf. the infinitive with nesciēbat, p. 8, l. 2.— sē: omit in translation.— omnia: all (about the subject).

21. legiōnibus: for syntax, cf. sibi, p. 34, l. 21.

nōluit, nec grātiās colōnis ēgit, quī operam suam ultrō pollicitī sunt: nam nē cōnspectum quidem legiōnum suārum putābat Indōs esse lātūrōs.

LESSON 32

Braddock's Defeat

Postrēmō vērō, cum in finēs hostium longē iter factum
5 esset, subitō in silvīs Indōrum ululātus est auditus; tum
tēla plūrima inmissa sunt, ac milītēs Britannicī, quī ho-
stem nūllum vidēbant, undique cadere coepērunt. Colōnī
interim in silvam celeriter inrūpērunt, arboribusque inter-
positis cum Indīs ācriter pugnābant; at imperātor legiōnēs
10 in viā habēbat instrūctās, nec suōs locō cēdere passus est,
quamquam caedem maximam fierī sentiēbat. Itaque illi
paene omnēs aut interfectī sunt aut vulnerātī, ac Braddoc
ipse vulnus accēpit, ex quō paulō post mortuus est. Va-
singtō milītēs perterritōs primō cohortārī cōnātus, imperā-
15 tōre vulnerātō exercitūs reliquiās ad castra redūxit, ubi
impedimenta maxima relicta erant. Ibi, conciliō convocātō,
tribūnī centuriōnēsque celeriter ē finibus hostium sibi dis-
cēdendum esse statuērunt.

Quō proeliō admoneor ut dīcam dē incommodō maximō,
20 quod ā Rōmānis acceptum est apud lacum Trasumennum,

7. vidēbant: we would say
"could see."

8. arboribus . . . interpositis:
freely, *getting behind trees*; lit.
what?

10. habēbat: *kept*. — suōs: cf.
suōrum, page 30, l. 9. — locō:
from their places; cf. the note on
p. 7, l. 4.

12. aut . . . aut: *either . . . or*.

14. imperātōre vulnerātō: trans-
late by a phrase introduced by
"after."

17. discēdendum esse: imper-
sonal use of the gerundive.

19. ut: *to*.

20. apud: *at*. — lacum Trasu-
mennum: in north central Italy.

cum Hannibal, dux Poenōrum, ibi insidiās clam fēcisset. Secundum litus est via angusta, tum agrī apertī. In locō apertō Hannibal castra posuit, milītēs autem multōs in latebrīs prope viam collocāvit. Tum, cum Rōmānī temerē
5 viā angustā ad Hannibalis castra versus iter facerent, subitō Poenī ē latebrīs ērūpērunt et hostīs perterritōs in lacum compulērunt.

LESSON 33

Later Events of the War

Etsī in proeliō, dē quō suprā dixi, Gallī victōriam erant adeptī Britannique ex illīs regiōnibus celerrimē sē recēpe-
10 rant, Vasingtōnis tamen virtūtem omnēs laudābant. Quem igitur colōnī, cōpiīs tōtā ex prōvinciā coāctīs, summum fēcērunt ducem et in montēs cum exercitū ad hostīs arcen- dōs misērunt; ubi bellum cum Gallīs eōrumque sociīs mēn- sēs multōs fēliciter gessit: tribusque post annīs, cum iam
15 imperātōrēs complūrēs ē Britannīā ad Americam missī essent, ūnā cum lēgātīs aliīs legiōnēs quāsdam ille ē Penn- sylvēniā trāns montēs dūxit atque hostēs ex eīs locīs discē- dere coēgit, ubi illi quondam Britannīs tantum dētrīmentum intulerant.

20 Quō incommodō acceptō, Gallī tamen minimē animō dēmissī bellum alibi ācritter gessērunt; nam Indī, quī erant paene omnēs amicī, eōs omnibus modis adiuuābant. Sed

2. in locō apertō: freely, *in the open*; lit. what?

5. viā angustā: for syntax, cf. the note on quā, p. 5, l. 13; here the abl. may be rendered "along."

8. erant adeptī: adipīscor, 3, adeptus sum, *gain*, or *secure*.

10. quem: not relative in the English translation.

18. Britannīs: dat. case; translate "upon."

20. animō dēmissī: lit. *cast down in mind*, i.e. *discouraged*. The abl. case here expresses specification.

postrēmō, multis dētrimentis frācti, pācem petiērunt; quam mox adepti sunt, Canadā aliisque regiōnibus Britannis trāditis.

Vasingtō interim ab exercitū domum redierat, ubi in mā-
5 trimōnium dūxit mātrōnam quandam, quae Marta appellā-
bātur; tum annōs paucōs in praediō suō mānsit ōtiōsus.

LESSON 34

The Outbreak of the Revolution

Nunc mihi dīcendum est dē bellō, quod colōnī paucis post annis cum Britannis ipsis gesserunt. Diū rēx senā-
tusque Britannōrum ā prōvinciis vectigālia quaedam exigere
10 erant cōnāti, etsi hae lēgēs lātae erant in conciliō, in quō
suffrāgium ferre Americānō nulli licēbat. Id colōnī molestē
ferēbant; ac postrēmō, cum iam tanta iniūria nōn diūtius
ferenda vidērētur, omnibus ex prōvinciis in ūnum locum viri
dēlēcti, in eis Vasingtō, ad cōnsilium commūne capiendum
15 convocāti sunt. Hī, conciliō habitō, litterās ad rēgem
Britannōrum misērunt, quibus postulābant ut colōnis iūra
eadem concēderentur, quae domi cīvēs reliqui obtinēbant.
Quibus litteris acceptis, rēx irātus nōn solum iūra concēdere

1. petiērunt: *i.e.* petivērunt.
—quam: *this* (noun).

2. adepti sunt: cf. the note on p. 37, l. 8. — Britannis: dat. case.

6. ōtiōsus: translate by another part of speech.

9. vectigālia: vectigālia, -ium, N., *taxes*.

10. lēgēs: lēx, lēgis, F., *measure, or law*.

11. suffrāgium ferre: *cast a vote* (suffrāgium, -i, N.). — id: *this* (*state of affairs*).

13. ferenda: *bearable*; lit. what?
—in ūnum locum: with convocāti sunt, l. 15.

14. in eis: cf. in, p. 26, l. 7.
—cōnsilium . . . conciliō: contrast the meaning of the two words.

15. litterās: for the force of the plural, see the Vocab.

16. quibus: *in which*; strictly, abl. of means.

17. obtinēbant: *freely, enjoyed*.

nōluit, sed etiam in Americam mīsit militēs multōs, quī ā colōnis audāciae poenās repeterent.

Apud oppidum parvum, nōmine Lexingtōnem, primum pugnātum est, magnā cum caede Britannōrum ; nam agri-
5 colae, muris interpositis, tēla plūrima inmīsērunt in hostēs, quī ita sex milia passuum sē recipere coācti sunt ad urbem, unde paulō ante profecti erant. Quibus rēbus factis, concilium idem, quod ad rēgem litterās mīserat, quaerere coepit imperātōrem, quī omnīs cōpiās Americānās dūceret. Cī-
10 vēs scilicet memoriā tenēbant rēs gestās Vasingtōnis in bellō, quod paucis ante annis cum Gallis Indisque gestum erat ; quārē ille summō assēnsū omnium dux brevī factus est.

LESSON 35

Operations about Boston

Sed antequam Vasingtō in Britanniam Novam pervenire
15 potuit, iterum ācritter pugnātum est in quōdam colle, ubi posteā Americānī columnam maximam eōrum nōmine statuērunt, quī ibi prō libertāte vītam suam largiti sunt. Eō in proeliō Britannī vicērunt ; sed nē hostēs quidem satis laudāre poterant virtūtem colōnōrum, quī impetum veterā-
20 nōrum tam audācter excēperant.

Vasingtō, postquam illūc pervēnit, hostis mēnsēs multōs

2. audāciae : *for* (lit. of) *their insubordination.*

3. apud : *near.*—primum : the adverb.

6. ita : *i.e.* under a hot fire.

7. concilium : (*deliberative*) *body.*

9. cīvēs : (*his*) *fellow-citizens.*

10. memoriā tenēbant : *i.e.* *had not forgotten.*

16. columnam : *columna, -ae, F., monument.* — nōmine : *in honor.*

17. statuērunt : *i.e.* *posuērunt.* — vītam : *translate as though the noun were plural.*

18. eō : *modifier of proeliō.*

21. Vasingtō, postquam : *cf. the note on hostēs, cum, p. 20, l. 17. — illūc : adv., thither.*



COLUMNA

In the picture is shown a monument about a hundred feet in height, erected at Rome in 104 A.D., in honor of the emperor Trajan. On its sides are sculptured scenes descriptive of one of Trajan's important campaigns, a fact which makes this column a very important source of information about the details of Roman military life.

intrā mūnitiōnēs Bostōnis continuit. Tum, cum eius cōpiae maiōrēs factae essent, subitō noctū prope urbem clam collem quendam occupāvit, atque ibi vāllum summā celeritatē exstrūxit; quīn etiam ubi diēs illūxit duxque hostium mūnitiōnēs novās animadvertit, vehementer commōtus ille: “Hī colōnī ūnā nocte,” inquit, “tanta opera perfēcērunt, quanta meus exercitus mēse tōtō perficere nōn potest.” Hōc vāllō exstrūctō, cum cotīdiē tēla plūrima ballistis Americanōrum in urbem mitterentur, hostēs brevī nāvēs cōscendere 10 atque ē portū fugere coāctī sunt.

Colōnī adhūc bellum gesserant ut iūra cīvium Britannicōrum sibi concēderentur; iam vērō, cum neque rēx neque senātus eōs audire vellet, dē Britannīā dēsciscere novamque condere rem pūblicam cōstituērunt.

LESSON 36

The Battles of Long Island and Trenton

15 Interim Britannī Novum Eborācum terrā marīque oppugnāre parābant. Haud procul est magna īnsula, quae Longa appellātur. Ibi ē nāvibus ēgressī hostēs cum Americānis ācritē pugnāvērunt. Quō proeliō victus Vasingtō nōn solum ex īnsulā discēdere sed etiam Novum Eborācum 20 dimittere coāctus est. Hīs rēbus factīs, colōnī omnēs animō

6. tanta . . . quanta: *such . . . as.*

7. potest: *could*, a common idiomatic use of the pres. indic. of this verb.—hōc vāllō, etc.: the abl. absol. may be translated by a “when” clause, and the following words by a participial phrase.

8. ballistis: abl. of means.

12. cum: causal.—neque . . . neque: *neither . . . nor.*

13. dē: *from.*—dēsciscere: dēsciscō, 3, -scīvī, -scītum est, *separate.*

14. rem pūblicam: *commonwealth.*

15. terrā marīque: *by land and sea*, the abl. expressing place where.

20. animō . . . dēmissī: cf. the note on this same phrase, p. 37, l. 20.

vehementer erant dēmissī; quārē Vasingtō, quamquam tōtō cum exercitū Britannicō in aciē pugnāre nōn audēbat, putāvit tamen aliquid sibi faciendum esse, quod spem civibus suis adferret. Quam facultātem mox nactus est. Nam
 5 Britannī, quī invitī cum Americānīs ipsī pugnābant, multōs Germānōs condūxerant, quī in exercitū stipendia facerent; quōrum Germānōrum pars quaedam haud procul ā Novō Eboracō in hibernīs iam collocāta erat. Quō cōgnitō, Vasingtō noctū profectus, etsī erat tempestās maxima flūmen-
 10 que quoddam trāseundum erat, ad eōrum castra versus audācter iter fēcit; quō in itinere duo hominēs frīgore perierunt. Hostēs, quī nihil suspicābantur diemque fēstum celebrābant, ab Americānīs facillimē capti sunt. Tum dēmum colōnī iterum spem magnam habēre coepērunt.

LESSON 37

The Retreat from Trenton

15 Paulō post Vasingtō, cum ausus esset iterum prōgredi ad eundem locum ubi Germānōs illōs cēperat, periculum adiit maximum. Nam subitō aderant Britannī plūrimī, nec propter natantem glaciem flūmen trānsire Americānī poterant. Tum imperātor Britannicus, quī Cornivallis appellā-
 20 bātur, cum Vasingtōnem crēderet iam dēmum circumventum esse, glōriāns, “Crās,” inquit, “ā mē iste vulpēs capiētur.”

2. aciē: *regular engagement.*

4. adferret: note the mood.

—quam facultātem: *freely, an opportunity for which.*

5. invitī: *with reluctance.* — ipsī: *in person.*

9. erat: *there was.*

12. diem . . . fēstum: *a holiday (fēstus, -a, -um).*

16. illōs: *i.e. those mentioned in l. 7.*

20. cum . . . crēderet: *translate by a participial phrase; so also on the next page, l. 11. In Latin the pres. part. is used much less freely than in English.*

21. crās: *adv., to-morrow.* — vulpēs (-is, c.): *fox.*

At Vasingtō suōs iussit sub vesperum in castrīs ignīs facere, ut cotidiē solēbant, cum interim paucī maximō cum strepitū circum vāllum opus fēstīnārent; quod eō cōnsiliō iussit, ut Britannī arbitrārentur ibi impetum hostium excipere
 5 Americānōs parāre. Nocte tamen intempestā colōnī, sine strepitū ūllō ex castrīs ēgressī, viīs dēviīs iter fēcērunt circum exercitum Britannicum, atque in agrōs apertōs incolumēs pervēnērunt. Itaque māne imperātor Britannōrum “vulpem istum” invenīre nōn potuit; Vasingtō enim etiam
 10 tum oppidum oppugnābat alterum, ubi quīdam Britannī aliā castra posuerant. Quārē Cornivallis, cum sentiret sē ēlūsum esse, celeriter sē recēpit, ut impedīmenta cōservāret sua, quae ad pugnam profectus post tergum longē reliquerat.

LESSON 38

Burgoyne's Campaign

Posterō annō alius imperātor Britannicus ex Canadā per
 15 prōvinciam Noveborācēnsē legiōnēs quāsdam dūcere cōnātus est. Cui omnia primō fēliciter ēvēnērunt; Taeconderōga enim capta est unā cum cōpiīs omnibus, quās eō Americānī comportāverant. Cum autem Germānī multī ē Britannicō exercitū in proximam prōvinciam
 20 missī essent ut equōs aliāsque cōpiās colōnōrum raperent,

2. ut : *as.* — solēbant : *sc. facere.* — paucī : here used as a (masc. pl.) noun.

3. vāllum : of course, of their own camp. — fēstīnārent : fēstīnō, 1, *hurry along.* — quod : *i.e. id quod, a thing which.* — cōnsiliō : *design.*

10. oppugnābat : note the tense.

13. ad pugnam : *for a battle (merely), i.e. not for a campaign.*

16. cui : *for whom.* — omnia : note the gender.

18. eō : *there, lit. thither ; cf. the note on quō, p. 8, l. 14.*

agricolae, quī ā pueritiā arma ferre solitī erant, undique statim convēnērunt; Germānisque magnō cum dētrimentō ex illā prōvinciā discēdere coāctis, imperātōrem ipsum mox ācerrimē adortī sunt Americānī, quōrum in diēs cōpiae 5 maiōrēs fiēbant.

Quō proeliō victī hostēs, quī iam omnibus ex partibus obsidēbantur, in Canadam redīre primō frūstrā cōnātī, postrēmō Americānīs in dēditiōnem vērunt. Tum scīlicet colōnī omnēs ecfrenātē gaudēbant, quod periculum 10 maximum effūgisse vidēbantur. Sed alibī hostēs ācriter gerēbant bellum; cuius ēventus adhūc maximē dubius erat.

LESSON 39

Valley Forge

Dum geruntur haec, dē quibus modo dixī, Britannī Philadelphiam oppugnāre parābant, quae urbs tum erat caput rei pūblīcae Americānae. Unde Vasingtō, cuius cōpiae 15 numerō erant multō inferiōrēs, hostēs nullō modō arcēre poterat; quārē senātus ad aliud oppidum sē recēpit, ac Philadelphia nullō dēfendente ā Britannīs capta est.

4. in diēs: *from day to day.*

6. omnibus ex partibus: *on all sides.*

8. Americānīs: dat. case.

9. quod: conjunction.

10. vidēbantur: sc. sibi, *i.e. they seemed to themselves; freely, they thought that they, etc.*

11. gerēbant: note the tense. — maximē dubius: by the prefixing of maximē, an adj. (or adv.) is raised to the superlative degree.

12. haec: neut. pl.

13. quae urbs: *the city which; lit. what?*

15. numerō: for syntax, cf. animō, p. 37, l. 20. — multō: (*by*) much.

16. senātus: *Congress.*

17. nullō: supplying the missing abl. of nēmō. — dēfendente: sc. eam (*i.e. Philadelphiam*). For the pres. part., being active in meaning, may take an object even when used, as here, in the abl. absol. construction.

Paucis post diebus circiter quinque milibus passuum ab eadem urbe acriter pugnatum est, sed tum quoque Vasingtō discessit inferior. Qui igitur, cum hiems iam adesset, milites suos in hibernis collocavit in quadam valle, ubi menses multos summā cum inopiā omnium rerum necessariarum miserrimē victum est. Nam non solum in aerario nulla erat pecunia, sed in castris mox frumentum quoque deficere coepit; militesque miseri, quibus erant saga nulla, saepe noctes totas prope ignem vigilare coacti sunt. Quin etiam traditum est, cum agmen in hiberna iter faceret, multorum pedes nudos in nive vestigia cruenta fecisse.

Sed iam demum ex Europā socii Americanis auxilium ferre parabant; multi enim etiam aliis ex gentibus molestē ferēbant Britannos iura civium colonis concedere noluisse.

LESSON 40

Help from France

Ita hoc ferē tempore factum erat ut Galli, qui Britannos minimē amābant, cum Americanis facerent foedus atque trans mare imperatorem cum classe mitterent, qui colonos

1. **quinque milibus passuum:** abl. of degree of difference. — ab: (*away*) *from*.

2. **pugnatum est:** *a battle was fought*; lit. what?

3. **cum:** *as, or since*.

5. **cum:** *freely, under the stress of*.

6. **miserrimē:** *miserē* (adv.), *wretchedly*. — **victum est:** impersonal pass. (from *vivō*). — **aerario:** *aerarium, -ri, n., public treasury*.

8. **quibus:** dat. case; cf. *cui*, p. 11, l. 2.

10. **multorum:** as (masc.) noun; cf. *multi*, l. 13.

12. **Americanis:** indirect obj. with *auxilium ferre*.

13. **aliis ex gentibus:** *i.e. of other nationalities*.

16. **factum erat:** *it had come to pass*.

17. **cum:** preposition. — **foedus:** *foedus, -eris, n., alliance*.

adiuvāret. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, Britannī illī, quī Philadelphiae cōnsēderant, cum sentīrent flūmine classe obsessō sē undique oppugnārī posse, celeriter sēsē coniūnxērunt cum cōpiis aliis, quae in prōvinciā proximā collocātae erant. Ita
5 Philadelphia rursus in Americānōrum potestātem pervēnit.

Adhūc Britannī crēdiderant colōnōs facile vincī posse: sed iam dēmum sēnsērunt sē rem difficillimam tractāre; cumque in prōvinciis, quae ad merīdiem spectant, colōnī rārī multīs cum servis in praediis maximis habitārent, in
10 eās cōstituērunt exercitūs suōs mittere, sī ibi rem gerere fēlicius possent. Nec vērō eōs cōsiliū fefellit; nam Gorgia unā cum aliis quibusdam prōvinciis brevī est occupāta, et ubicumque in aciē pugnātum est, Americānī victi sunt. Quibus dētrīmentīs minimē animō dēmissi, colōnī
15 iam manūs parvās coēgērunt, quae in silvis palūdisque latēbant, dōnec occāsionem rei bene gerendae nanciscerentur; tum subitō impetū factō aut capiēbant Britannōs aut eōs in fugam dabant.

LESSON 41

Benedict Arnold

Dum haec geruntur, in prōvinciā Noveborācēnsī quīdam
20 imperātor Americānus, nōmine Arnoldius, dux audāx ac

1. quibus rēbus: *this*. — Philadelphiae: locative case.

2. flūmine . . . obsessō: translate by a conditional clause.

3. oppugnārī: note the last letter of the word. — posse: *could*. — sēsē: *i.e.* sē.

8. cum: *since*, or *inasmuch as*.

10. eās: referring to prōvinciis, l. 8. — sī: cf. sī, p. 33, l. 4.

11. nec vērō, etc.: *freely, and the plan WAS successful*; lit. what?

13. ubicumque: conjunction, *wherever*.

15. manūs: *companies*, or *bands*.

16. latēbant: cf. the note on rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17. — rei bene gerendae (gen. case): *freely, successful action*. — nanciscerentur: translate the subjunctive "could."

strēnuus, Britannīs parābat prōdere castra, quae colōnī in ripā flūminis Hudsōnis posuerant, quōque ab Americānis comportāta erant omnia, quae ad bellum necessāria erant; nam castra nātūrā loci mūnitissima erant, ac fūnis quoque 5 ferreus ibi trāns flūmen ductus erat, nē nāvēs hostium longius adversō flūmine nāvigāre possent.

Britannī, cum iam diēs prōditiōnis appropinquāret, nūntium misērunt, quī ducem conveniret Americānum, litterāsque ab eō reportāret. Incolumis ad Arnoldium pervēnit 10 nūntius; sed cum ad Britannōs rediret, ab Americānis tribus captus est: quī captivum sine morā in castra proxima dēdūxērunt, quamquam ille miser omnibus modis ab eīs salūtem impetrāre cōnātus est. Quā dē rē certior factus, Arnoldius ad Britannōs quam celerrimē perfūgit; quō- 15 rum in exercitū imperātor brevī factus est.

Nūntius interim, causā cōgnitā, capitis est damnātus; litterās enim, quās manū ducis Americāni scrīptās ferēbat; dēlēre nōn potuerat, antequam in castra ā colōnis tribus ductus est. Arnoldius, cum contrā suōs civēs ācerrimē bellum gessisset, postrēmō apud Britannōs mortuus est, etiam 20 eīs ipsīs invīsus quōs tantā perfidiā adiuvāre cōnātus erat.

1. castra, quae, etc.: namely, West Point.

2. quōque: *i.e.* quō + que, and into which; for quō, cf. the note on p. 8, l. 14.

3. omnia: note the gender. — ad: *for*.

4. nātūrā: note the case. — fūnis (-is, M.): *chain*.

5. ferreus (-a, -um): *iron*. — ductus erat: *had been stretched*.

7. prōditiōnis: prōditiō, -ōnis, F., *betrayal*; cf. the verb prōdō, l. 1.

12. ille miser: *he, poor fellow*.

14. quam celerrimē: *as quickly as possible*. — quōrum in exercitū: *and in their army*.

16. cōgnitā: *tried*. — capitis: *i.e. to death*. The charge or (less often) the penalty may be expressed, as here, by the genitive.

17. manū: abl. of means with scrīptās.

19. cum . . . gessisset: *after waging*. — suōs: observe the emphatic position (cf. the note on suum, p. 11, l. 6).

21. eīs ipsīs: dat. case; construe with invīsus.

LESSON 42

A Roman who fought against his Country

Quibus rēbus admoneor ut pauca dicam dē Coriolānō, clārō duce Rōmānō; quī imperātor fortissimus, ā civibus iniūriā damnātus, ab urbe discessit sēque coniūxit cum hostibus, quī anteā bellum Rōmānis saepe intulerant.

5 Dēnuō mox bellō indictō, hostibus primō rēs undique fēliciter ēvēnērunt, Rōmānique lēgātōs pācis petendae causā ad Coriolānum mittere coācti sunt. Quī autem, propter iniūriam ā civibus inlātam adhūc irātus, asperius respondit lēgātōsque maestissimōs domum dīmisit; quīn etiam idem
10 nūntiū ā senātū iterum missi nē in castra recepti quidem sunt.

Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, Rōmāni graviter permōti etiam sacerdotēs mittere cōstituērunt, si ab eis saltem Coriolāni animus ferōx flecti posset; cum vērō nē hī quidem quicquam impetrāre potuissent, tum māter ipsa uxorque Coriolāni
15 cum aliis matrōnis complūribus ad hostium castra maestae profectae sunt.

Quō ubi perventum est, matrīs verbis vehementer commōtus Coriolānus pollicitus est sē sine morā cum exercitū ē finibus Rōmānōrum discessūrum. Postea apud hostis mul-

1. pauca: a few (words).

2. quī: this (adj.).

3. iniūriā: abl. used adverbially. — urbe: the city, i.e. Rome, often thus designated as being the city par excellence.

4. Rōmānis: dat. case.

5. dēnuō: i.e. iterum.

6. pācis petendae causā: i.e. ad pācem petendam. Literally causā means "for the sake of."

8. asperius: rather harshly (asperē: adv., harshly); for the

rendering of the comparative, cf. the note on maximum, p. 13, l. 11.

9. lēgātōs: envoys or ambassadors. — maestissimōs: pred. adj. — idem: pl.

13. ferōx (-ōcis, adj.): fierce. — flecti: flectō, 3, flexi, flexus, influence. — vērō: and. — quicquam: any concession, lit. anything.

15. maestae: in (the garb of) mourning.

tōs annōs vīxit, nec libenter; nam trāditum est eum esse solitum dīcere senī miserrimum esse exsilium.

LESSON 43

The Surrender of Cornwallis

Sed ut ad Americānōs redeāmus, ab eis diū ac variā fortūnā bellum cum Britannīs gestum est. At paulātim oppida
5 prōvinciārum, quae ad merīdiem spectant, rursus in potestātem Americānōrum venērunt, ac Cornivallis, quī iam ibi bellum gerēbat, in Virginiam postrēmō sē recipere coactus est; quā in prōvinciā summā cum licentiā rapere et agere coepit omnia.

10 Vasingtō autem iam aderat cum exercitū sociīsque Gallicis; et Cornivallis in urbe mūnitissimā, quae Eborācopolis appellātur, undique obsessus, oppugnātiōnem duōs mēnsēs aegrē sustinuit. Tum hostēs, cum frūstrā ^{invasit} ērupere cōnātī essent parsque mūnitiōnum ab Americānīs esset expugnāta,
15 sē suaque omnia Vasingtōnī dēdidērunt. Cornivallis autem ipse, nē suis oculis ignōminiam exercitūs vidēret, eō diē sē esse aegrum simulābat, atque in tabernāculō, dōnec dēditiō est facta, maestus morātus est.

Hāc victōriā nūntiātā, Americānī efrēnātē gaudēbant;
20 ac senātus in templum convocātus dīs grātiās maximās ēgit.

1. vīxit: from vivō. — nec libenter: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.

2. senī: for an old man; senī is from senex.

3. ut . . . redeāmus: to return.

6. ibi: in that region.

8. licentiā: licentia, -ae, F., lawlessness. — rapere et agere: freely, rob and plunder; strictly,

steal (goods) and drive off (live stock).

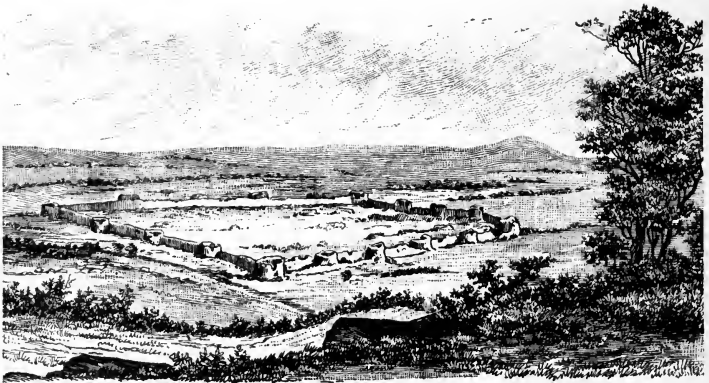
11. mūnitissimā: strongly fortified.

13. hostēs: i.e. the English.

16. nē . . . vidēret: freely, in order to avoid seeing.

16. suis: cf. again suum, p. 11, l. 6.

20. dīs: cf. p. 14, l. 19.



MŪNĪTĪŌNĒS

Above may be seen the remains of a Roman camp, showing still very well the nature of its defenses ; namely, a *vāllum*, strengthened at short intervals by small towers.

Omnēs enim sentiēbant Britannīs pācem iam dēmum esse petendam.

LESSON 44

Washington retires to Private Life

Pāce factā, Carletō, dux Britannicus, quī tum Eborācum Novum praesidiō tenēbat, cum exercitū nāvēs cōscendere 5 domumque redire ā rēge iussus est.

Illam in urbem Vasingtō lēgātōs suōs paulō post convocāvit. Cumque pauca locūtus eōs valēre iussisset, lēgātī, quī eō duce annōs circiter octō stīpendia fēcerant, lacrimās nōn potuērunt diūtius continēre, sed flentēs imperātōrem 10 dextrā tenuērunt. Lēgātīs dimissis, Vasingtō, ut imperium suum dēpōneret, ad urbem statim profectus est, ubi senātus tum habēbātur.

Cum iter faceret, multitudinēs maximae ex oppidis omnibus ēgressae flōrēs in viā sparsērunt; et inter fausta nōmina 15 etiam pater patriae est appellātus. Sic prōgressus est usque ad urbem, ubi eum senātus exspectābat; tum, imperiō dēpositō, domum sine morā contendit, arbitrātus sē iam in praeidiō iūre ōtiōsum vīvere posse, sicut fēcerat, antequam bellum indictum est.

1. Britannīs: cf. the note on sibi, p. 34, l. 21.

6. lēgātōs: *staff officers*.

7. eōs valēre iussisset: *had bidden them (to) fare well (valeō, 2, valūi)*.

8. eō duce: cf. advenā duce, p. 21, l. 14. — circiter: cf. p. 45, l. 1. — stīpendia fēcerant: cf. p. 42, l. 6.

10. ut: *for the purpose (of)*.

11. senātus . . . habēbātur:

freely, *Congress was . . . in session*.

13. cum: *as*.

14. sparsērunt: spargō, 3, sparsi, sparsus, *scatter*. — fausta: *faustus, -a, -um, complimentary*.

16. exspectābat: note the tense.

17. arbitrātus: cf. the note on veritī, p. 2, l. 17.

18. iūre: abl. of iūs, used adverbially; cf. iniūriā, p. 48, l. 3. — ōtiōsum: cf. p. 38, l. 6, note.

LESSON 45

The Father of his Country

Laus maxima Vasingtōnī tribuenda est, quod sē rēgem facere nōluit. Sed eius nōmen manet semperque mānsūrum est in animīs hominum, in aeternitāte temporum, neque aliud umquam ab Americānīs aequē amābitur. Quod ille pater patriae appellātus est, hīc est honor, quī paucīs contigit. Nam abhinc multōs annōs Cicerō ita est vocātus, cum vīcisset civīs pessimōs, quī rem pūblicam perdere voluerant; et antīquitus hoc idem cōgnōmen Camillō ā civibus grātis iūre datum est.

10 Nam ille vir Rōmānus, dux fortis clārusque, iniūriā in iūs vocātus, abierat in exsilium, vivēbatque apud Ardeātēs, cum Gallī plūrimī trāns montēs in Ītaliā subitō profectī, proeliō acrī vicērunt Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendērunt. Tum Camillus, conciliō convocātō, Ardeātēs hortātus est ut
15 audācter finēs dēfenderent suōs, Rōmānīsque fortiter auxiliū ferrent. Itaque, illō duce, oppidānī noctū clam profectī, in quōsdam Gallōs, quī sine custōdiīs in agrō apertō

1. laus (laudis, F.): *credit*. — tribuenda est: *is due* (tribuō, 3, tribuī, tribūtus, *give*, or *ascribe*). — quod: *that* (conjunction).

2. mānsūrum est: cf. futūrus erat, p. 31, l. 7.

3. aeternitāte: aeternitās, -ātis, F., *endless extent*. — temporum: *the ages*. — aliud: (*any*) *other*.

4. aequē: adv., *equally*. — quod: *as for the fact that*.

5. hīc est: *this is*; for the gender, cf. the note on quod, p. 30, l. 6. — paucīs: (*only*) *a*

few; masc., as noun. — contigit: contingō, 3, -tigī, *fall (to the lot of)*, or *happen (to)*.

7. perdere: perdō, 3, perdidī, perditus, *ruin*.

8. cōgnōmen: cōgnōmen, -inis, N., *title*. — grātis: *grateful*.

11. Ardeātēs: *people of Ardea* (a town about twenty miles south of Rome).

12. Gallī: *the Gauls*, a people inhabiting the country now known as France.

13. urbem: cf. the note on urbe, p. 48, l. 3.

humī iacēbant sōpīti, maximō clāmōre fēcērunt impetum, eōsque in fugam dedērunt. Ac paulō post reliquī quoque hostēs, quī in castrīs ad Rōmam morātī erant, ā Camillō paene ad ūnum occīsī sunt.

3. ad Rōmam: *near* (or *at*) *Rome*. 4. ad ūnum: cf. p. 4, l. 5.

TALES OF LAND AND SEA

LESSON 46

The Settler's Daughter

In Britannia Novā quondam agricolae, quī semper impetūs timēbant Indōrum, in agrōs cotidiē sēcum arma ferre solēbant; ac prope quendam vīcum in colle ēditō castellum quoque positum erat, quō, sī quandō opus esset, colōnī 5 liberōs uxōrēsque statim dēdūcerent. Quō ex castellō ōlim sīgnum subitō datum est Indōs adesse. Hōc auditō, agricolae, equīs in agrīs sine morā relictīs, ad villās cucurrerunt, et mulierēs ac liberōs quam celerrimē in castellum dēdūcere coepērunt.

10 At vir quīdam, cui erat filia tantum, ad castellum cum eā pervenire nōn potuit, priusquam Indī in cōspectum vēnerunt; itaque puellam parvam in arbore cavā collocavit, nē hostēs eam invenire possent, ipseque, ut auxilium cīvibus suīs ferret, per agrōs fortiter contendit.

15 In proeliō, quod est ibi commissum, ab Indīs captī, in silvās longinquās dēductī sunt agricolae paucī, in eīs ille vir, dē quō modo dixī. Oppidānī scilicet crēdidērunt filiam ūnā cum patre captam esse: sed ille multis post mēnsibus

3. ēditō: ēditus, -a, -um, *high*.

4. quō: cf. quō, p. 47, l. 2.

— sī quandō: *if at any time, or whenever*. — opus esset: *there should be need*.

7. sine morā: *i.e. instantly*.

8. quam celerrimē: cf. p. 47, l. 14.

11. priusquam: *i.e. antequam*.

15. est . . . commissum: *i.e. commissum est*.

16. in eīs: cf. p. 38, l. 14.

ex Indōrum vicō clam effūgit; cumque postrēmō domum pervēnisset neque in oppidō filiam potuisset invenīre, civīs suōs ad arborem cavam dēdūxit. Ibi reperta sunt ossa tantum et sagitta ūna.

LESSON 47

The Trials of War

5 Ab hostibus trānsmarīnīs quī ōlim bellum cum colōnīs Americānīs multōs annōs gessērunt, facinora atrōcia facta esse dīcuntur plūrima. Nam cuidam colōnō erant duo equī pulcherrimī, quōs ille maximā diligentiā cūrābat; at imperātor hostium, quī hoc oppidum praesidiō tenēbat,
10 quīque erat omnibus oppidānīs superbiā maximē invīsus, illōs equōs quondam ad sē dūcī iussit, quod nūntium cum litterīs ad castra longinqua mittere vellet. Sed ūnum ex equīs nēmō postea vīdit, alterque paucīs post hōrīs in viā moribundus haud procul repertus est.

15 Praedam quoque ē villīs undique rapere solēbant hostēs; sed eōs quondam duo servī Afrī callidē elūsērunt; postquam enim militēs appropinquāre nūntiātum est, hī servī fidēlēs, tabulā abreptā, argentum dominī celeriter sub aedibus condidērunt. Ūnus autem ex eīs sub aedibus ar-
20 gentum vix ab alterō accēperat, cum subitō hostēs in cōspectum vērunt. Itaque ille, quī suprā stābat, tabu-

3. ossa: os, ossis, N., bone.

5. trānsmarīnīs: trānsmarīnus, -a, -um, from across the sea.

6. atrōcia: atrōx, -ōcis, adj., dastardly.

7. dīcuntur: note the pl. verb.

10. quīque: i.e. quī + que. — omnibus oppidānīs: dat. case;

construe with invīsus. — superbiā: abl. of cause.

11. quod . . . vellet: on the ground that he wanted.

16. callidē: adv., cleverly.

18. tabulā: tabula, -ae, F., board.

21. ille: the one. — tabulam: cf. l. 18.

lam statim dēmisit, nē quid hostēs suspicārentur; ac servus alter, quī nullō modō ēvādere poterat, trīs diēs noctēsq̄ue sub aedibus dīcitur sine aquā cibōve mānsisse.

LESSON 48

The Attempt to surprise Detroit

Postquam bellum, quod ā Britannīs cum Gallīs Indīsque
5 gerēbātur, paene cōfectum est, multaue castella longin-
qua in potestātem Britannōrum vērunt, quīdam rēx
Indōrum, nōmine Pontiac, dux fortis et ācer, castella illa
recipere Britannōsque ita ex eīs regiōnibus expellere sē
posse spērāre coepit; quārē, conciliis undīque convocātis,
10 Indōs hortātus est ut sē fortiter sequerentur atque hostīs
invīsōs ad ūnum interficerent.

Cum iam ad caedem faciendam Indī omnia expedirent,
ē castellō quōdam mulier forte ēgressa barbarōs in taber-
nāculis arma parāre animadvertit. Quā rē nūtiātā, lēgātus
15 Britannicus, quī ibi praeerat, nihil tamen verēbātur, dōnec
puella Inda, quae eum amābat, castellum maesta intrāvit,
cōsiliūque tōtum Indōrum ostendit. Tum vērō castel-
lum custōdiis maiōribus firmātum est, nec nimis mātūrē;
nam posterā nocte procul in silvīs audīrī poterat cantus

1. dēmisit: not dīmīsit. —
quid: *i. e.* aliquid. After nē and
sī, the short forms quis, quid, etc.,
are regularly used.

3. dicitur: cf. dīcuntur, p. 55,
l. 7.

4. bellum, quod, etc.: namely,
the French and Indian War.

8. recipere: a compound of
capiō. This and the following
infin. depend on posse, l. 9.

9. posse: *could.*

10. sē: *him.*

14. quā rē: *this observation.*

15. nihil . . . verēbātur: freely,
felt no concern; lit. what?

18. nimis: adv., *too.* The
whole phrase may be rendered
freely *and none too soon.*

19. audīrī: note the last letter
of the word. — cantus: cf. p. 3,
l. 2.

hostium, quī circum ignēs saltābant: sic enim Indī sē ad caedem incitāre solēbant.

LESSON 49

The Attempt to surprise Detroit (Continued)

Māne ad castellum cum comitibus circiter sexāgintā vēnit Pontiac, conciliumque postulāvit. Haud magnō intervāllō sequēbātur reliqua multitūdō Indōrum, quī simulābant sē extrā mūnitiōnēs pilā lūsūrōs.

Portis castellī patefactīs, Pontiac, quī nihil suspicābātur, ūnā cum comitibus, quī omnēs arma vestimentīs tēcta ferēbant, sine morā intrāvit; deinde autem vehementer permōtus milītēs omnēs et complūrēs negōtiātōrēs cum armīs circumstāre animadvertit. Postquam vērō ad prīncipia dēductus est ac vidit duōs trēsve tantum adesse centuriōnēs, audācter cum lēgātō loquī coepit.

Priusquam ad castellum perventum est, comitēs rēx monuerat sē, cum pauca prius dē pāce locūtus esset, lēgātō zōnam datūrum; quō signō impetum statim in lēgātum centuriōnēsque faciendum esse, cum interim Indī cēteri, quī extrā mūnitiōnēs relictī erant, per portās inrumperent praesidiumque adorīrentur.

2. caedem: (*the business of*) murdering.

4. intervāllō: translate the abl. "at" (strictly, abl. of manner).

6. pilā: (*at*) ball; abl. of means (pila, -ae, f.). — lūsūrōs: sc. esse.

8. quī omnēs: *all of whom*. — vestimentis: abl. of means; but translate "under."

10. cum armīs: *i.e. (fully) armed*.

11. circumstāre: *i.e. in such a way as to encircle* Pontiac and his followers. — prīncipia: prīncipia, -ōrum, n., *headquarters*.

15. pauca: note the gender; cf. multa, p. 5, l. 9.

16. zōnam: zōna, -ae, f., *belt*. — datūrum: *would offer*. — quō signō: abl. of time when; translate "at."

17. cēteri: *i.e. reliquī*.

Cum vērō porrigere zōnam ille cōnārētur, lēgātus sīgnum dedit, et subitō prīncipia sonō armōrum complēta sunt. Tum dēmum barbarī, quī iam plānē sentiēbant omnia cōnsilia sua patefacta esse, vultū dēmīssō ē castellō silentiō sunt ēgressī, atque in silvās properāvērunt; ubi ē cōspectū Britannōrum mox āmissī sunt.

LESSON 50

A Successful Ruse

Colōnī, cum bellum gererent, hostis saepe fallāciīs ēlūsērunt. Sicut dux quīdam Americānus, quī mēnsēs multōs cum exercitū fuerat, uxōris conveniendae causā ōlim clam domum profectus est. Cuius adventū cōgnitō, oppidānī, quī paucī hostibus favēbant, certiōrem fēcērunt lēgātum Britannicum, quī castrīs praeerat proximīs, ducem illum in oppidō latēre.

Itaque sine morā cum legiōne noctū profectus, lēgātus ad oppidum celeriter contendit; ubi statim aedibus Americānī ignēs admōtī sunt. Quō animadversō, ille scilicet crēdēbat spem omnem iam esse sublātam: sed filia ex aedibus fortiter ēgressa lēgātō, "Māter mea," inquit, "aegra est. Dā mihi, obsecrō, salūtem eius saltem miserae."

1. zōnam: see p. 57, l. 16. —
sīgnum dedit: *i.e. made a motion.*

2. prīncipia: see p. 57, l. 11.

7. fallāciīs: *tricks or trickery*
(fallācia, -ae, F.).

8. sicut: *as, for instance.*

9. causā: cf. the note on p. 48,
l. 6.

10. oppidānī: (*his*) *townsmen.*

11. quī paucī: cf. quī omnēs,
p. 57, l. 8.

12. praeerat: cf. p. 56, l. 15.

The word means literally "to be before" or "to be over," notions which, in Latin, call for the dative.

14. legiōne: (*his*) *regiment.*

15. Americānī: as noun, gen. sing.

16. ignēs: translate as sing., and turn the whole phrase into the active form. — quō: neuter.

19. obsecrō: *I beg (you)* (obsecrō, 1). — eius . . . miserae: *of her, poor woman.*

Quā rē impetrātā, mulier cum lectō lēniter ēlāta est; militēs autem, nē dux ipse ūllō modō effugere posset, aedēs interim omnibus ex partibus circumstābant: quīn etiam haud procul sunt morātī, dōnec aedēs tōtae ignī cōn-
 5 sūmptae sunt. Tum laetī ad castra sē recēpērunt, inter sē glōriantēs ūnum saltem Americānum scelerātum poenās dedisse. At incolumis erat ille; nam, cum uxor efferrētur, sub lectō manibus genibusque ambulāverat, neque eum viderat quisquam. Sic astūtiā filiae servātus mox ad ex-
 10 erciturū tūtō rediit.

LESSON 51

How the Town was Saved

Multis post annis, quam ea, quae modo dixi, facta sunt, duae puellae Americānae, quae aliō in oppidō prope mare habitābant, facinus memorābile ausae sunt. Ōlim enim, cum pater eārum longē abesset, in cōspectum subitō vēnit
 15 nāvis longa Britannica; ex quā, cum in portum pervēnisset, militēs multī scaphīs vectī ad litus celeriter contendērunt atque Americānōrum coepērunt incendere nāvigia, quae tum forte in portū ad ancoram cōsistēbant.

Fugam iam parābant oppidānī cēteri; at puellae illae,

1. rē: *concession*. — ēlāta est: from efferō.

3. omnibus ex partibus: cf. p. 44, l. 6.

4. tōtae: cf. the note on laetus, p. 2, l. 16.

5. inter sē: *among themselves*.

8. manibus, etc.: abl. of means; translate "upon" (genū, -ūs, N., *knee*). — neque . . . quisquam: cf. p. 2, l. 11.

9. astūtiā: *astūtia*, -ae, F., *quick wit*.

11. post . . . quam: *i.e.* postquam. — ea: *the events*.

13. facinus: not as on p. 55, l. 6 (see the Vocab.). The phrase, as a whole, should be rendered freely.

19. parābant: *were making preparations for*. What are other meanings of this word?



MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

Among the ancients, music was a comparatively undeveloped art. The scantiness of the music of the stage is indicated by the above scene from a comedy, where the actor in the foreground is manipulating a tambourine (*tympanum*), while another in the rear plays upon double pipes (*fibiae*).

In the Roman army, music was not employed as an accompaniment for the march; but various trumpets were used for sounding signals. In the picture below may be seen the long straight trumpet (*tuba*) used by the infantry.



tibiā tympanōque arreptīs, secundum litus clam properāvērunt, ac colle parvō interpositō clārē canere coepērunt. Quō sonō auditō, Britannī vehementer commōtī armātōs plūrimōs appropinquāre arbitrābantur (nam Americānī multaeque gentēs aliae tibiā tympanōque canere solent, cum in proelium prōgrediuntur). Quārē, veritī nē interciperentur, hostēs, nāvigiīs oppidānōrum relictīs, celerrimē sē ad suam nāvem longam recēpērunt; nam nōn diūtius de iniūriīs inferendis cōgitābant, sed sine morā nāvem solvērunt atque in mare apertum prōgressī sunt. Ita ā puellis duābus oppidum servātum est.

LESSON 52

An Example of Fortitude

Indī Americānī summum cruciātum sine gemitū pati possunt, atque Indī Asiāticī nūdī dīcuntur inter nivēs vitam agere, neque ēdere gemitum, etsī ignēs admoveantur. Illī tamen cruciātū fortiter ferendō Rōmānōs nullō modō superant. Nam ōlim, cum diū neque fēliciter bellum cum rēge

1. tibiā: tibia, -ae, F., *flute*. — tympanō: tympanum, -ī, N., *drum*.

2. interpositō: cf. p. 36, l. 8. — clārē: adv., *loudly*.

5. tibiā tympanōque: see l. 1; for syntax, cf. *manibus*, p. 59, l. 8.

6. nē: (after a verb of fearing) *that*.

7. suam: cf. *suum*, p. 11, l. 6.

8. inferendis: *inflicting*; cf. the force of the gerundive as seen in the use with *ad* and *causā* in purpose clauses.

9. solvērunt: lit. *loosed*, or *released*; see the Vocab.

13. nūdī: pred. adj. — vitam: translate as pl.

14. ēdere: not *edere*. — etsī: *even though*. — ignēs: translate as sing. — admoveantur: sc. *eīs*; subjunctive, because part of the indirect discourse. Render the whole phrase freely.

15. ferendō: *in (the matter of) bearing*; cf. *inferendis*, l. 8. The ablative expresses specification.

16. neque fēliciter: *and unsuccessfully*; cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.

Porsinnā gestum esset, C. Mūcius, clārus iuvenis Romānus, Tiberim cōstituit sōlus trānsire rēgemque hostium, sī posset, interficere. Itaque tēlō veste tēctō profectus est; cumque flūmen clam trānsisset, in castra hostium incolumis 5 pervēnit. Ibi tamen rēgem ā comitibus internōscere nōn potuit, ac prō Porsinnā scribam occīdit; deinde frūstrā effugere cōnātus ad rēgem ipsum dēductus est. Quī cum vellet penitus cōgnōscere cōnsilia, quae in sē inita erant, ignēs iussit admovērī, ut iuvenis omnia prōdere cōgerētur. 10 Ille autem ultrō dextram in ignem porrēxit, cruciātumque sine gemitū passus est. Quō visō rēx, tantam fortitudinem admirātus, captivum incolumem dīmisit, ac paulō post ā Rōmānīs pācis condiționēs petivit, quod cum gente, ex quā erant iuvenēs tantae virtūtis, diūtius bellum gerere nōllet.

LESSON 53

A Hasty Leave-Taking

15 Prīmō bellō, quod Britannī cum Americānis gessērunt, hostēs, cum ex Canadā per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsē

1. Porsinnā: king of Etruria, a district of Italy just north of Latium.—C.: *i.e.* Cāius (*Gaius*).

2. Tiberim: acc. sing. of Tiberis.—sī: *if*.

3. veste: *i.e.* vestimentō: cf. p. 57, l. 8.

5. internōscere: internōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nōtus, *distinguish*.

6. scribam: scriba, -ae, M., *clerk*.

7. ad: *before*.—quī: the king.—cum vellet: translate by a participial phrase.

8. penitus: adv., *fully*.—in: *against*.—inita erant: ineō, -ire, -iī, -itus, *enter into*.

9. omnia: *everything*.

11. quō: neut.

13. quod: *because (as he said)*.—ex quā . . . iuvenēs: *freely, the young men of which*.

14. tantae virtūtis: the gen. expresses characteristic or quality; translate first literally and then freely.

15. prīmō bellō: abl. of time when.

ad mare iter facere cōnābantur, ā sociīs Indīs multum adiūtī sunt; barbarī enim paulum ante exercitum prōgressī, villīs undique incēnsīs, colōnōs summā crūdēlitāte occidēbant. Quārē agricolārum omnium suspēnsī erant animī.

5 Dum rēs ita sē habent, in praediō quōdam servus Āfer ōlim subitō ex hortō perterritus fūgit, dominumque certiōrem fēcit sē Indum in herbā latentem vīdisse. Quō audītō, dominus statim ad frātris villam profectus est, ut cum eō cōnsilium commūnicāret; interim uxor filiū iussit
10 equōs carrumque parāre. Tum, postquam rediit pater, pauca in carrum imposuērunt, aedibusque ac bōbus relictīs, ad rīpam flūminis satis magnī, quod prope fluēbat, sine morā prōgressī sunt. Id cum trānsissent, celeriter inde per agrōs contendērunt unā cum colōnīs aliīs, quī in
15 hīs regiōnibus diūtius morārī nōn audēbant. At nē sic quidem sine labōribus periculīsque effūgērunt; nam in itinere, tempestāte subitō coortā, māter liberīque sub caelō noctem agere coactī sunt: sed postrēmō in prōvinciam proximam incolumēs pervēnērunt.

LESSON 54

The Capture of a Man-of-War

20 Ōlim multī armātī Americānī ad Canadam versus iter faciēbant, ut ibi cum Gallīs pugnārent. Quī postrēmō pervēnērunt ad lacum, quī trānseundus erat, sī longius prō-

1. Indīs: here adj.
3. occidēbant: cf. rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17.
5. rēs: *matters*.
8. villam: *farm*; cf. the commoner meaning of the word in l. 3.
9. commūnicāret: *communicō*, 1, *make . . . jointly*.

11. pauca: note the gender. — bōbus: from bōs.
12. satis: *quite*.
14. aliīs: not reliquīs or cēterīs.
18. noctem agere: cf. vītam agere, p. 61, l. 13.
20. armātī: strictly, noun; but the phrase may be rendered freely.

gredi vellent; in lacū autem ultrō citrōque nāvis longa Gallica nāvigābat, nē quis ibi scaphīs trānsire posset.

Americānī scilicet nāvem longam sibi statim capiendam esse intellēxerunt. Conciliōque convocātō, cum variae sententiae dictae essent, subitō lēgātus quīdam, maximae virtūtis vir, imperātōri “Ego,” inquit, “sī mihi milītēs sex et cuneōs complūrīs dabis, celeriter rem cōficiam.” Milītibus cuneisque datīs, lēgātus nocte intempestā ad nāvem longam clam scaphā vectus est; ubi cuneōs sic inseruit, ut gubernā-
10 cula nūllam in partem movērī possent.

Māne Americānī lacum trānsire coepērunt. Quō animadversō, Gallī, quī nihil suspicābantur, vēlīs passīs in hostēs impetum facere cōnātī sunt; at nāvis, ventīs statim ad litus dēlāta, facile capta est ā quibusdam Americānīs, quī ad id
15 ipsum in litore morātī erant. Nāve longā captā, scaphae Americānōrum sine ūllō incommodō ad litus ulterius pervēnērunt, milītēsque rursus ad Canadam per montēs silvāsque lēniter prōgressī sunt.

LESSON 55

The Fall of New London

Cum Britannī Novum Eborācum praesidiō tenērent,
20 colōnī classis onustās rēbus omnibus, quae ad bellum necessāriae sunt, secundum litus Novae Britanniae ad

1. ultrō: not as on p. 62, l. 10; see the Vocab.

2. nē quis: *so that no one*; cf. the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1.

4. sententiae: cf. sentiō.

8. nocte intempestā: cf. p. 43, l. 5.

9. inseruit: inserō, 3, -seruī, -sertus, *force in*. — ut: introduc-

ing a clause of result. — gubernācula: cf. the illustration facing p. 1.

10. movērī: note the last letter of the word.

12. passīs: from pandō.

13. ventīs: abl. of means.

14. id ipsum: *this very purpose*.

16. ulterius: modifier of litus.

occidentem nāviganētēs interdum vidēbant; tum, ē portibus liburnicīs celerrimē vectī, onerāriās capiēbant, sī quae forte, tardius prōgressae, intervāllō maiōre sequēbantur nāvēs longās, quae eīs praesidiō missae erant. Id Britannī diū molestē tulerant; cumque īnsula Longa iam tōta subācta esset, nē postea umquam colōnī in nāvēs suās impetum facere audērent, Novum Londīnium dēlēre cōstituērunt.

Itaque ab īnsulā noctū profectī, fretum clam trānsiērunt; sed ventīs adversīs impedītī portum nōn potuērunt intrāre, 10 dōnec diēs postera illūxit. Tum celeriter ē castellīs sīgnum colōnīs datum est hostēs adesse, et agricolae armātī omnibus ex partibus in oppidum convēnērunt. Quī, cum Britannī ē nāvibus ēgressī essent, ad litūs vēsus fēcērunt iter, mūrisque interpositīs tēla plūrima in hostēs inmisērunt. 15 At Britannī, quī numerō erant multō superiōrēs, mox inrūpērunt in oppidum atque ignēs undique aedibus templisque admōvērunt. Quō vīsō, colōnī, ut uxōrēs liberōsque in loca tūta dēdūcerent, ex oppidō in agrōs sē recēpērunt.

LESSON 56

The Fall of New London (Continued)

Prope oppidum erant castra quaedam, quae Americānī 20 praesidiō haud magnō tenēbant. Quō cum hostēs pervē-

1. nāviganētēs: modifying *clasis*, p. 64, l. 20.—*interdum*: not *interim*.—*vidēbant*: *used to sight*.

2. capiēbant: cf. *rapīēbant*, p. 7, l. 17.—*sī quae*: *if any*; cf. the note on *quid*, p. 56, l. 1.

3. *tardius . . . maiōre*: absolute comparatives (cf. the note on p. 13, l. 11).—*intervāllō*: cf. p. 57, l. 4.

4. *eīs praesidiō*: *as an escort*

for them, lit. *for a protection to them*, *praesidiō* being a dat. of service.—*id*: *i.e.* this preying upon their shipping.

5. *subācta*: *subigō*, 3, *-ēgī, -āctus, subdue*.

6. *nē . . . umquam*: *so that never*.

8. *fretum*: *sound*.

15. *numerō*: cf. p. 44, l. 15.

16. *ignēs*: translate as sing.

nissent, colōnōs statim sē dēdere iussērunt. Datō autem respōnsō minimē grātō, ācerrimē ibi pugnātum est: sed Britannī, quī, ut suprā dixī, numerō multō erant superiōrēs, postrēmō cōnscondērunt mūnitiōnēs, castraque expugnā-
 5 vērunt; quīn etiam virtūte colōnōrum, quī animō obsti-
 nātō restiterant, adeō exacerbātī sunt, ut summā crū-
 dēlitāte occiderent dēditōs quōsdam, quī arma iam prōiē-
 cerant.

Deinde tamen, castra funditus dēlenda esse arbitrātī,
 10 vulnerātōs prius efferre coepērunt; sed id tantā saevitiā,
 ut hominēs miserī in carrum alius super alium abicerentur.
 Tum ā Britannīs circiter vīgintī carrus dūcī coeptus est ad
 villam quādam, ubi vulnerātī ab amīcis cūrārī possent.
 At praeceps erat via, ac postrēmō ā militibus carrus diūtius
 15 retinērī nōn poterat, sed per dēclive celeriter dēlātus, in
 arborem inlīsus est. Ipsā concussiōne quīdam ē vulnerātis
 interfectī esse dīcuntur; ac cēterōrum ululātus etiam trāns
 portum audītus est.

Sed iam undique colōnī plūrimī ad oppidum auxili ferendī
 20 causā properābant, hostēsque celeriter ad nāvis sē recipere
 coāctī sunt.

2. respōnsō: noun, derived from respondeō.

3. ut: *as*.

6. adeō: cf. p. 5, l. 18. — exacerbātī sunt: exacerbō, 1, *exasperate*.

7. dēditōs: *as* noun; cf. vulnerātōs, l. 10.

9. funditus: adv., *totally*, or *utterly*. — arbitrātī: cf. veritī, p. 2, l. 17.

10. id: *sc. fēcērunt*.

12. coeptus est: the passive forms of this verb are used

when the dependent infinitive is passive.

13. possent: note the mood.

14. praeceps (-cipitis, adj.): *steep*.

15. per dēclive: *along the slope*; dēclive being used as a neut. noun (from dēclivis, -is, -e, *steep*). — dēlātus: *i.e. rolling down*; lit. what?

16. concussiōne: concussio, -ōnis, *F., shock*. — ē: *of*.

19. auxili: cf. the note on Standisī, p. 16, l. 4.

LESSON 57

Captivity among the Indians

Priusquam prōvinciae Americānae validae sunt factae, Indī oppida longinqua saepe adoriēbantur; miseraque erat fortūna eōrum colōnōrum, quī ab eis capti sunt. E quibus ūnus haec ferē dē sē commemorat:

5 "Ōlim," inquit, "cum barbari subito in cōspectum vēnissent, ego cum oppidānis cēteris fugā petivī salūtem, et in palūdem proximam quam celerrimē contendī. Sed in lutō prōlapsus, ā tribus Indīs captus sum, atque ūnā cum reliquīs captivīs in silvās longē sum dēductus; ubi diēs multōs
10 per montēs summō cum labōre fēcimus iter, cum interim contumēliās acerbissimās cotīdiē ferre cōgēbāmur.

"Noctū hostēs captivōs humi supinōs collocābant, cuneisque in terrā dēfixis, manūs pedēsque artē religābant, nē quis nostrum per tenebrās effugere cōnārētur. Interdum
15 autem tanta erat inopia cibī, ut barbari, veritī nē frūmentum dēficeret, nōs etiam ignī mandāre semel iterumque in animō habērent. At ego, postquam frīgore fameque sum paene necātus, paucīs post mēnsibus ā dominō novō emptus, postrēmō domum incolumis pervēnī."

2. adoriēbantur: cf. capiēbant, p. 65, l. 2.

4. haec: neut. pl. — commemorat: *i.e.* nārrat. The whole phrase may be rendered freely *discourses somewhat as follows*, etc.

5. inquit: present tense.

6. fugā: abl. of means; we would say, "*in flight*"; cf. other renderings of this abl., p. 57, ll. 6 and 8.

7. quam: cf. p. 47, l. 14. — lutō: lutum, -ī, N., *mud.*

11. contumēliās: cf. p. 18, l. 1.

13. artē: adv., *tightly*. — nē quis: cf. the same phrase on p. 64, l. 2.

14. nostrum: from ego.

15. autem: *moreover*. — nē: cf. p. 61, l. 6.

16. mandāre: mandō, 1, *consign.* — semel iterumque: see the Vocab.

LESSON 58

A Fresh Supply of Powder

Ōlim puella, quae Elizabēta appellābātur, oppidānīs suīs ita salūtī fuit. Subitō ab Indīs oppidum erat oppugnātum, colōnīque statim sē recēperant in castellum parvum, quod barbarī diū expugnāre frūstrā cōnāti sunt. At dēficere iam
 5 coeperat pulvis ille paene magicus, quō celeritāte exitiālī tēla Americānōrum aliārumque gentium multārum longissimē feruntur. Quārē colōnī vehementer erant animō dēmissī; quamquam enim in villā haud longinquā cōpia pulveris satis magna relictā erat, nēmō eam putābat
 10 ūllō modō ad castellum tūtō adferri posse, quod Indī in insidiīs undique latēbant. Multī tamen periculum subīre volēbant, sed Elizabēta: “Ego ībō,” inquit; “puella enim sum, mēque carēre facilius potestis.”

Cōnsiliō ā duce probātō, puella mox ē castellō palam
 15 ēgressa est, lēniterque ad villam versus ambulāvit. Quārē novā permōtī, Indī prīmō ēventum tacitī exspectābant, et Elizabēta nūllō impediēte ad villam facillimē pervēnit; cum autem, pulvere arreptō, ad castellum rursus celeriter currere coepisset, tum barbarī, quī iam sē ēlūsōs sentiēbant,
 20 tēla plūrima undique coniēcērunt. Sed puella fortis sine

2. ita: *in the following way.*

—salūtī: lit. *for a safety*; cf. praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4, and see the Vocab. —erat oppugnātum: contrast expugnāre, l. 4.

5. quō: abl. of means.

7. animō dēmissī: cf. p. 37, l. 20.

10. modō: freely, *chance*. For other renderings, see the Vocab.

11. subīre: subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *risk*, lit. *undergo*.

12. volēbant: *were willing*.

13. mē . . . carēre: *spare me*, lit. *be without me*; mē is abl. case. —potestis: *you could*; cf. potest, p. 41, l. 7.

16. rē: *performance*.

17. nūllō impediēte: cf. nūllō dēfēdente, p. 44, l. 17.

vulnere intrā portam castellī recepta est, colōnique pulvere sublevātī impetūs Indōrum potuerunt sustinēre, dōnec amīci auxili ferendī causā ex oppidīs finitimīs frequentēs convēnerunt.

LESSON 59

A Battle against Great Odds

5 In quōdam lacū maximō, cuius in lītore positum est oppidum Taeconderōga, ācritter quondam ab Americānis cum Britannīs pugnātum est. Americānis parvae erant nāvēs et paucae; at dux Britannicus, quī facile ē Canadā cōpiās adferre poterat, multās nāvēs longās summā diligentīā in-

10 strūctās parāverat; sē enim Taeconderōgam brevī expugnātūrum spērābat.

Imperātor tamen colōnōrum, vir maximae virtūtis, etſi numerō erat multō inferior, committere proelium minimē dubitāvit; sed cum hōrās multās esset pugnātum noxque

15 iam adesset, nāvēs vix nābant Americānae, tēlaque paene dēfēcerant. Quō quidem tempore Britannī, noctem veriti, proeliō dēstitērunt; sed ad ancoram haud procul cōsistēbant, nē colōnī per tenebrās effugere cōnārentur.

At Americānī nocte intempestā, lucernīs extinctis, silentiō

20 dedērunt vēla, et magnō circuitū hostēs vitāvērunt. Itaque māne, cum Britannī proelium redintegrāre vellent, vix in cōspectū erat nāvis ūlla; quārē illī, ancorīs sublātis, summā celeritatē insequi coepērunt. Postquam autem Americānōs fugientēs paene adsecūtī sunt, cōstitit ea

2. sublevātī: sublevō, 1, *help out*.

6. Americānis: dat. case.

9. instrūctās: *equipped*.

12. maximae virtūtis: cf. *tantae virtūtis*, p. 62, l. 14.

17. proeliō: for syntax, cf. *cōnātū*, p. 21, l. 3.

19. lucernis: *lucerna*, -ae, F., *lantern*.

24. fugientēs: participle as adj.

nāvis, quā vehēbātur dux ipse colōnōrum, et sōla hostium sustinuit impetum, dōnec reliqua classis Americāna in portum mūnitum pervenire potuit; quīn etiam nē illam quidem praedam cēpērunt Britanni; nam suō nāvigiō, cum ad litus
5 appulsum esset, Americānī ipsī ignis admōvērunt.

LESSON 60

A Night Attack

Bellō primō, quod ā Britannīs cum Americānīs gestum est, in flūmine quōdam Carolaenae Ulteriōris insula parva praesidiō Britannicō tenēbātur* interim dominus insulae, vir locuplēs rei que publicae amantissimus, molestē scilicet
10 ferēbat castra hostium in praediō suō collocāta esse, eō magis quod milītēs interdum sē insolenter gerēbant.

Postrēmō Americānī cōstituērunt adversō flūmine nāvigare cōpiāsque Britannicās, si possent, ex insulā expellere. Itaque clam profecti, nāvibus nocte intempestā ad insulam
15 silentiō appulsis, impetum ācerrimum subitō fēcērunt. Quā rē novā permōti Britanni ad arma celeriter cucurrērunt; et dominus quoque insulae, quī nesciēbat amicōs adesse, impetum ab hostibus factum arbitrātus, unā cum uxōre liberisque in silvās tardius sē contulit; ipse enim pedibus

4. suō: cf. suum, p. 11, l. 6.

5. appulsum esset: cf. appulit, p. 31, l. 13.

6. bellō primō: cf. p. 62, l. 15.

7. Ulteriōris: lit. *Farther* (from the point of view of the capital of the United States), *i.e. South*.

9. rei . . . publicae amantissimus: *most loyal to his country*, lit. *most loving of the common-*

wealth (objective gen.); *amantissimus* is the superlative of the part. *amāns*.

10. eō magis: *and all the more*, lit. *on this account (the) more*.

11. insolenter: adv., *insolently*, or *impudently*.

16. rē: *action*.

19. tardius: absol. compar. — *pedibus captus*: *being crippled*, lit. *being incapacitated in his feet*.

captus ā servīs tum sellā ferēbātur. Ubi sic ad casam longinquam perventum est, māter subitō clāmāvit puerum infantem in aedibus relictum esse. Quō auditō, filia fortiter per tenebrās profecta celeriter domum cucurrit; cumque 5 inter tēla amicōrum et hostium in aedēs pervēnisset, puerum ē cūnīs rapuit incolumemque ad mātrem sēcum redūxit.

LESSON 61

A Choice of Evils

Parvō in oppidō Novae Britanniae habitābat quīdam agricola, cui erant liberī octō. Is ōlim, cum subitō nūntiatum esset Indōs appropinquāre, ex agris ad bona liberōsque 10 servandōs summā celeritatē properāvit; aegra enim domī uxor iacēbat.

Quō igitur cum pervēnisset, liberīs convocātis atque ad castellum proximum statim praemissis, ipse uxōrem ad iter parāre cōnātus est. Sed iam in cōnspectū erant Indī, 15 neque diūtius ūlla erat salūtis spēs. Itaque uxōre bonisque relictis, agricola, quī iam antea statuerat cum liberīs sibi vīvendum aut prō eīs moriendum esse, equum cōnscendit, atque ad castellum versus quam celerrimē contendit. Liberōs mox adsecūtus est, et omnēs, etsi Indī vestigiis 20 sequēbantur, in castellum incolumēs pervēnērunt; nam

1. sellā: sella, -ae, F., *sedan chair*; for syntax, cf. rāvibus, p. 6, l. 10.

2. clāmāvit: cf. clāmor.

3. infantem: infāns, -antis, adj., *infant*.

6. cūnīs: cūnae, -ārum, F., *cradle*. — mātrem: (*her*) *mother*.

10. servandōs: agreeing with the nearer noun. For the form of

the phrase as a whole, cf. ad Gallos expellendōs, p. 35, l. 14. — aegra: pred. adj.

17. vīvendum: sc. esse. Note that this and the following gerundive are impersonal; but translate *that he must*, etc.

19. vestigiis sequēbantur: *i.e. were following the trail* (lit. *in their footsteps*).

quotiēns propius accesserant barbarī, pater cōsistēbat in viā, eōsque armīs terrēbat. Sed interim uxor aegra, mulier magnae fortitudinis, unā cum captivīs aliīs ab Indīs in silvās dēdūcēbātur.

LESSON 62

Lost in the Woods

5 Multōs abhinc annōs quīdam puer parvus mātrem insciente in silvam clam profectus, diū ibi sēcum sub arboribus lūsit. Quī, cum iam advesperāsceret, viam reperire nōn potuit ac brevī intellēxit sub caelō sibi noctem agendam esse. Itaque ex foliīs lectum fēcit, cumque per arborēs lūnam stellāsque
10 aliquamdiū suspēxisset, postrēmō somnō gravissimō quiēvit. Māne iterum viam invenire frūstrā cōnātus, famem bācis sustinuit; quō modō quīnque diēs per silvās errāvit. Deinde noctū ignem animadvertit, et celeriter prōgressus in vīcum Indōrum subitō pervēnit. Ā quibus cōmiter acceptus, mul-
15 tōs diēs ibi morātus est.

Dum haec fiunt, lēgātus prōvinciae unā cum comitibus paucīs puerī quaerendī causā in scaphā profectus erat, oppidaque Indōrum finitima adibat omnia. Quae rēs puerō salūtī fuit; nam postrēmō reperti sunt quīdam barbarī,
20 quī nūntiāvērunt ipsum incolumem esse viamque ostendē-

1. propius: absol. compar., *too near*. — accesserant: translate as if a perfect. — cōsistēbat: note the tense, and contrast the force of the imperfect dēdūcēbātur, l. 4.

5. abhinc: cf. p. 52, l. 6. — insciente: insciēns, -entis, adj.: lit. *not knowing*; translate the abl. absol. freely.

6. profectus: *slipping away*. — sēcum: *i.e. by himself*.

9. stellās: stella, -ae, F., *star*.

10. suspēxisset: suspiciō, 3, suspēxi, suspectus, *watch*, lit. *look up at*. — somnō gravissimō: abl. of manner.

18. rēs: *proceeding*. — puerō salūtī fuit: cf. oppidānis . . . salūtī fuit, p. 68, l. 1.

20. ipsum: *he*. — viam: *i.e. the way to reach him*.

runt. Puerō sic receptō, lēgātus sicās dedit eis Indis, ā quibus ille servātus erat. Barbarī scilicet dōnis tam grātis gaudēbant, puer autem domum reductus est.

LESSON 63

The Battle of Saratoga

Saepe prō patriā fortissimē pugnāvit iste Arnoldius, qui 5 posteā Britannīs prōdere cōnātus est ea castra mūnitissima, quae in ripā flūminis Hudsōnis posita sunt: et nōn numquam etiam salutī civibus suis fuit; tantopere enim ā militibus amābatur, ut ipsō adventū suō ad victōriam eōs incitāre posset.

10 Ōlim Saratōgae, cum eius ōrdinem adēmisset imperātor, quōcum simultātem gerēbat, ille, sonō proelii ad aurēs adlātō, "Ego," inquit, "sī dux esse nōn possum, at saltem manipulāris erō;" quae cum dixisset, iniussū imperātōris equum cōnscendit celerrimēque in proelium vectus est: ubi 15 militēs, duce vetere cōgnitō, clāmōre sublātō laetī secūtī sunt, atque impetum ācerrimē fēcērunt in eam partem, ubi aciēs hostium cōnfertissima vīsa est. Ibi summā virtūte pugnāns Arnoldius est vulnerātus, victōria autem ab Americānis parta est.

2. ille: the boy.

3. gaudēbant: *were delighted*.

— autem: omit in translation.

4. iste: *that* (in the disparaging sense), a frequent meaning of this word; cf. p. 42, l. 21.

6. nōn numquam: *i.e. sometimes*.

8. ipsō: *mere*.

10. Saratōgae: for syntax, cf.

Philadelphiae, p. 46, l. 1. — adēmisset: adimō, 3, -ēmī, -emp-
tus, *take away*.

11. quōcum: *i.e. quō + cum*.
— simultātem gerēbat: *he was at odds* (simultās, -ātis, F., *quarrel*).

13. iniussū imperātōris: cf. iniussū suō, p. 28, l. 7.

16. partem: *direction*.

17. vīsa est: from *videor*.

Etsi vulnera Arnoldi non erant exitiabilia, tempus tamen morti opportunissimum erat. Odium enim perfidiae, quam ille postea usus est, gloriam eius rerum gestarum semper obruet; quin etiam traditum est (ut supra commemoravi) 5 nē Britannos quidem, qui eius perfidia victoriam se nacturos speraverant, hominem ullō in honore habuisse, postquam bellum confectum esset.

LESSON 64

Unwelcome Visitors

Britanni, cum iam iterum cum Americanis gererent bellum pugnisque navalibus saepe victi essent, postremo con-
stituērunt usque ad Lovisiānam classem mittere, si ibi
feliciter rem gerere possent. Quare impulsis navibus ad
eum locum, ubi in mare fertur flumen maximum, quem Indi
patrem aquarum vocabant, milites multi in litus egressi
praedia finitima explorare coeperunt.

15 Sic factum est ut quidam adulescens Americanus, qui in
villā otiosus horā diēi ferē quartā morabatur, milites complūris in hortō latentēs subitō animadverteret. Quā rē
novā graviter commotus, comites ut sine morā latebrās

1. Arnoldi: cf. Standisi, p. 16,
l. 4. — tempus: *occasion*. — ta-
men: may be omitted in transla-
tion.

2. mortī: note the case. —
odium (-ī, N.): *contempt*. — per-
fidiae: objective gen.; translate
"for." — quā: the case regularly
used with ūtor.

4. obruet: obruō, 3, -ruī, -rurus,
dim, lit. *overwhelm*.

7. confectum esset: for mood,
cf. the note on *admoveantur*, p.
61, l. 14.

9. nāvālibus: nāvālis, -is, -e,
naval.

10. usque ad Lovisiānam:
freely, to far-away L. — si: *in the
hope that*; cf. si, p. 33, l. 4.

12. fertur: *rolls*; cf. *dēlātus*,
p. 66, l. 15. — quem: for gender,
cf. the note on *quod*, p. 30, l. 6.

15. factum est ut: *it hap-
pened that* (factum est from *fiō*).

16. horā diēi ferē quartā: *i.e.*
about 10 A.M. See the note on
p. 75.

17. rē: *happening*.



CANIS

Just inside the street door of a Pompeian house is found worked into the mosaic of the pavement this representation of a watchdog. The words *Cavē canem* signify "Beware of the dog."



HŌRAE

The Romans divided the time between sunrise and sunset into twelve equal hours—long in summer, and short in winter. Above is shown a sundial used to mark the time in the great public baths at Pompeii.

quaerent hortātus est, et ipse primō fugā salūtem petiuit; sed ab hostibꝯ statim circumventus, sē dēdere tum nōn dubitāvit. At paulō post fenestrā patefactā ērūpit, cumque tēla hostium undique in eum conicerentur, incolumis
5 pervēnit in palūdem, ubi Britannī armīs impedītī summō labōre sequēbantur.

Itaque iuvenis, cum dēmum ab hostibus intervallō satis magnō abesset, arborem nactus idōneam in quā latēret, celeriter cōscendit. Brevī autem sonum exiguum sub
10 arbore audīvit; cumque dēspēxisset, ibi vidit canem, quam maximē amābat. Quārē pericūlum veritus, comitem fidēlem, quae per palūdem dominum secūta erat, invitus necāvit, multīsque cum lacrimīs sub foliīs tēxit. Deinde aliquamdiū tacitus in arbore morātus est; postquam autem Britannī
15 quaerendō dēfessi ad villam sē recēpērunt, magnō circuitū custōdiās hostium vitāvit, eōrumque dē adventū certiōrem fēcit imperātōrem Americānum, quī oppidum haud longinquum praesidiō tum tenēbat.

LESSON 65

The Boyhood of Daniel Boone

Abhinc annōs circiter ducentōs in Pennsylvēniā nātus est
20 puer, quī posteā factus est explōrātōr clārissimus. Quīn etiam ā primā pueritiā ille arma ferre cōsuēverat, ac in

1. fugā: cf. p. 67, l. 6.

2. tum: *i.e.* for the time being.

3. fenestrā patefactā: abl. of way by which; translate *through*.

— cum: concessive.

7. ab: *from*.

8. abesset: *i.e.* was separated.

10. dēspēxisset: dēspiciō, 3, -spēxi, -spectus, *look down*; cf. suspēxisset, p. 72, l. 10.

12. invitus: cf. p. 35, l. 12.

14. postquam: freely, *when at length*. — quaerendō: cf. nandō, p. 12, l. 17.

15. magnō circuitū, etc.: cf. p. 69, l. 20.

20. factus est: from fiō.

21. primā: *early*; cf. p. 22, l. 7. — cōsuēverat: *i.e.* solēbat.

silvīs ambulāns ferās saepe occidit. Ōlim, cum vespere primō domum nōn redisset, vicinī, veritī nē puer ab Indīs aut feris esset interfectus, frequentēs convēnērunt, complūrisque diēs errāvērunt per silvās, sī ūllō modō eum invenire possent; quī postrēmō pervēnērunt ad casam rāmīs caespitibusque aedificātam ā puerō ipsō, quī frūstum carnis in ignem porrigēns humi sine timōre sōlus sedēbat. Nam ē viā nōn errāverat; sed cōsultō sē longius contulerat in silvās, quod procul ab oppidīs sine comitibus etiam tum
10 libenter habitābat.

Paucīs post annīs pater multa milia passuum ad loca longinqua cōstituit in silvās ēmigrāre, quod ipsī quoque urbēs oppidaque minimē grāta erant. Quās ad sēdēs novās ubi perventum est, puer, cum pater frātrēsque arborēs ex-
15 cīderent agrōsque ad satūs accipiendōs parārent, ferīs interfectīs carnem ē silvā cotidiē domum reportābat. Interdum noctū quoque vēnātus esse dicitur: quō quidem tempore facibus ārdentibus ūtī solēbat; lūmina enim, ut saepe ab explōrātōribus audivimus, ad ferās ē latebrīs ēlici-
20 endās magnō ūsuī sunt.

2. nē: cf. the note on p. 61, l. 6.

5. rāmīs caespitibusque: abl. of means with aedificātam; translate (freely) "of."

7. sine timōre: *i.e.* *unconcerned*; cf. timeō.

8. longius: absolute comparative.

9. etiam tum: *i.e.* even when so young.

10. libenter habitābat: *i.e.* *he had a liking for living*.

11. pater: sc. eius.

12. in silvās: acc., because of the verb of motion (ēmigrāre); we

would say "*in the woods*."— ipsī: *him*; construe with grāta.

13. quās: *this*.

15. satūs: satus, -ūs, M., *crop*.

16. reportābat: note the tense.

17. vēnātus: note the case (and that dicitur is personal). — quō . . . tempore: *i.e.* at night; freely, *on such occasions*. In translating, quidem may be omitted.

18. facibus: fax, facis, F., *torch*; for syntax, cf. quā, p. 7 l. 2. — ut: *as*.

19. ab: *from*.

20. magnō ūsuī: cf. the note on praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4.

LESSON 66

The End of the Pequots

Nātiō Indōrum crūdēlissima, quae haud procul ā Novō Londīniō habitābat, quondam īnsidiās collocāre ac colōnōs singulōs undique interficere subitō coepit. Quibus rēbus nūntiātis, ē prōvinciā proximā manus exigua missa est, quae agricolīs auxiliō esset poenāsque ab Indīs repeteret. At militēs longē ā litore prōgredi nōn audēbant; quī igitur, parvō frūmentī numerō direptō tabernāculisque paucīs incēnsīs, ē finibus hostium brevī domum sē recēpērunt. Barbarī vērō, hāc iniūriā graviter permōti, incendia ac caedēs
 10 undique etiam crūdēlius iam miscuērunt.

Tum dēnique ē prōvinciā missa est classis, cuius praeffectus iussus erat militēs expōnere in quōdam portū parvō, quī haud longē ā castrīs Indōrum aberat. Ille autem, hostēs ita cōnsilium suum facile cōgnōscere posse arbitrātus,
 15 praeter illum portum nāvīgāvit, cumque classis ē cōspectū barbarōrum longē discessisset, tum dēmum nāvēs ad litus appulit. Deinde in terram ēgressus, sine morā per silvās viā dēviā cum exercitū profectus est, ut ā tergō hostēs adorīrētur. In itinere quāsdam Indōrum nātiōnēs finitimās
 20 adiit, ē quibus multī armātī operam suam pollicitī sunt.

5. auxiliō: cf. ūsuī, p. 77, l. 20, and see the Vocab. — poenās . . . repeteret: cf. p. 39, l. 2.

7. numerō: amount. — direptō: diripiō, 3, -ripui, -reptus, plunder (cf. rapiō).

9. incendiā . . . caedēs: translate as singulars. With incendium cf. incendō.

10. crūdēlius: crūdēliter, adv., savagely.

11. prōvinciā: i.e. eādem prōvinciā.

12. iussus erat: i.e. was under orders. — expōnere: expōnō, 3, -posui, -positus, land.

14. ita: i.e. if he followed orders. — posse: cf. note, p. 23, l. 9.

18. viā dēviā: cf. viīs dēviīs, p. 43, l. 6. — ā tergō: cf. the use of ex in the phrase omnibus ex partibus.

Sic postrēmō perventum est ad sēdēs hostium, quī, rati propter timōrem colōnōs praetervectōs esse, iam minus diligenter castra sua custōdiēbant.

LESSON 67

The End of the Pequots (Continued)

Noctū castris appropinquāvērunt colōnī. Intus erant
5 uxōrēs quoque liberīque Indōrum, intusque audīri poterat
cantus barbarōrum, quī, circum ignis saltantēs, victōriās
superiōrēs celebrābant. Colōnī aliquamdiū tacitī expectā-
vērunt; tum, cum diēs iam illūcēsceret Indi que saltandō
dēfessī somnō quiēscerent gravī, subitō in castra portis
10 duābus inrūpērunt.

Quō impetū repentinō commōti, hostēs tamen celeriter ē
lectis exsiluērunt, tabernāculisque interpositis, tēla in militēs
conicere fortiter coepērunt plūrima. Quō animadversō, dux
colōnōrum statim intellēxit cōsiliū sibi mūtandum esse,
15 suōsque tabernāculis ignēs admovēre iussit, deinde celeriter
ēgressōs undique castra circumstāre. Quō modō Indi mi-
serī, ignī ē castris fugere coāctī, ā colōnīs paene ad ūnum
interfecti sunt; et si quī forte aciem perrūperant, eōs sociī
Indī libenter occidērunt.

20 In proeliō multi quoque ē colōnīs sunt vulnerāti, atque
exercitus statim Novum Londīnium sē recipere coāctus est;

1. rati: *i.e.* arbitrāti.

6. saltantēs: cf. saltābant,
p. 57, l. 1.

7. superiōrēs: here, of time.
— expectāvērunt: *waited*.

8. saltandō: for syntax, cf.
nandō, p. 12, l. 17.

9. somnō . . . gravī: cf.

p. 72, l. 10. — portis: cf. the
note on fenestrā, p. 76, l. 3.

18. si quī . . . , eōs: lit. *if any*
. . . , *them* (cf. the note on quid,
p. 56, l. 1).

19. Indī: as adj. — libenter oc-
cidērunt: freely, *were glad to kill*.

21. Novum Londīnium: town

quō, ut iussum erat, nāvēs iam redierant, ut ibi ducem milī-
tēsque exspectārent. Sed hostēs paucīs post mēnsibus al-
terā pugnā victī sunt, neque umquam posteā iniūriam ūllam
colōnīs facere potuerunt; quīn etiam brevī in manūs parvās
5 dīvīsī, aliī in aliam nātiōnem ascītī sunt.

LESSON 68

A Difficult Escape

Quondam puerī duo sine timōre in agrīs apertīs cotīdiē
laborābant; nam, etsī colōnī tum bellum cum Gallīs Indīs-
que gerēbant, in hīs regiōnibus nēmō barbarōs ūllōs nūper
viderat. Sed ōlim duo Indī subitō ex arboribus ērūpērunt
10 proximīs, puerisque arreptīs sē celerrimē in silvam recēpē-
runt. Quā rē novā perterritus puer minor flēre coepit; sed
alter, quī plānē sentiēbat flētum nihil prōfutūrum esse, frā-
trem hortātus est ut sē fortiter gereret. Per silvam ūnā
cum captivīs iam properābant barbarī. Quī, postquam sic
15 diēs multōs iter fecērunt, ad lacum pervēnērunt longin-
quum, ubi cum aliīs cīvibus suis hiemāre cōstituerant.

Ibi dum morantur, linguam barbarōrum discere coepē-
runt puerī. Quō modō maior primā aestāte repperit Indōs
in animō habēre in Canadam dūcere captivōs, eōsque ibi in

names in the acc. and abl. do not require prepositions to express the ideas "to" and "from."

1. iussum erat: note the gender.
2. alterā pugnā: we would say "in" rather than "by."
3. neque umquam: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.
4. colōnīs: dat. case.
5. aliī in aliam: *some into one . . . , some into another.*

11. minor: *i.e. the younger*; cf. maior, l. 18.

12. flētum: flētus, -ūs, M., *crying*; cf. fleō. — nihil: adverbial acc., *not . . . at all*, lit. *in no respect*. — prōfutūrum esse: prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *help, or avail*.

16. suis: *of theirs*.

18. maior: cf. minor, l. 11. — primā aestāte: cf. p. 22, l. 7.

servitūtem Gallīs vēndere. Quārē, cibō armīsque arreptīs, frātrēs duo ex hibernīs noctū clam fūgērunt; ubi autem diēs illūxit, in arbore cavā sē somnō dedērunt.

Interim Indī cum canibus undique puerōs quaerēbant.
 5 At frāter maior, cum canēs propius ad arborem accessissent, ē somnō lātrātū excitātus, callidō ūsus cōnsiliō frūstum carnis eīs prōiēcit. Quae rēs puerīs salūtī fuit; cum enim canēs carnem dēvorārent, barbarī nihil suspicantēs arborem praeteriērunt. Quō vīsō, puerī rursus profectī per silvās errā-
 10 vērunt, dōnec fame labōribusque paene cōfectī sunt; tum in quoddam oppidum colōnōrum sibi antea ignōtum subitō pervēnērunt.

LESSON 69

Stories about Daniel Boone

Ille explōrātor clārus, cuius dē pueritiā paulō ante dixī, inter ferās Indōsque paene tōtam ēgit aetātem. Ōlim ē
 15 Carolaenā Citeriōre trāns montēs ūnā cum aliīs explōrātōribus quīnque audācter in vallēs longinquās contendit; ubi ūnō cum comite ab Indīs captus, postquam ab eīs septem diēs summā diligentīā custōditus est, noctū clam surrēxit, comiteque ē somnō excitātō, incolumis ad casam pervēnit,
 20 quam ipse cēterique explōrātōrēs paulō ante fēcerant.

Paucīs post annīs eāsdem in regiōnēs colōnōs cum uxō-

1. servitūtem: servitūs, -ūtis, F., *slavery*; cf. servus.

2. autem: *and*.

5. propius: *quite close*; what use of the compar.?

6. lātrātū: lātrātus, -ūs, M., *barking*. — ūsus: translate as if ūsus est . . . et.

7. quae: *this*.

11. sibi: construe with ignōtum.

13. cuius: modifier of pueritiā.

14. aetātem: not aestātem.

15. Citeriōre: (*citerior*, -ior, -ius), lit. *Nearer, i.e. North*; cf. the note on Ulteriōris, p. 70, l. 7.

20. cēterī: contrast the force of aliīs, l. 15.

ribus liberisque dēdūxit ad locum, quī castellō maximē idō-
 neus vidēbātur. Ubi aliquamdiū fortunā prōsperā ūsus est;
 sed quondam eius filia, quae errābat in agrīs, ut flōrēs car-
 peret, ūnā cum puellis aliīs ab Indīs capta, in silvās com-
 5 plūra milia passuum ducta est. Dum autem iter faciunt,
 puellae prūdentēs omnibus locīs aut rāmōs frēgērunt parvōs
 aut humī pannōs reliquērunt; quae rēs magnō ūsuī erat patri-
 bus irātis, quī haud longō intervāllō vestigiīs insequēbantur.
 Barbaris victīs, puellae laetae domum reductae sunt.
 10 Paulō post ille explōrātor ipse iterum captus, diū apud
 Indōs vivere coāctus est. Sed postrēmō, cum per aquam
 prōfluentem cucurrisset, nē vestigia ūlla faceret, ad amicōs
 incolumis pervēnit. Multis autem ante mēnsibus uxor
 liberique, patrem iam pridem mortuum ratī, ad propinquōs
 15 suōs in Carolaenam Citeriōrem maestī sē recēperant.

LESSON 70

An English Privateer

Abhinc multōs annōs, etsī illō ipsō tempore bellum
 iūstum cum Hispānis nōn gerēbātur, quīdam praefectus
 Britannicus per maria nāvīgābat omnia, gazamque ac nāvēs
 Hispānōrum omnibus locīs spoliābat; itaque accidit ut, cum

6. prūdentēs: prūdēns, -entis,
 adj., *wide-awake*. — omnibus locīs:
 cf. the note on eōdem locō, p. 7,
 l. 4; translate *everywhere*. — aut
 . . . aut: cf. p. 36, l. 12.

7. pannōs: pannus, -ī, M., *strip*
of cloth.

8. intervāllō: cf. the note on
 p. 57, l. 4. — vestigiīs: cf. p. 71,
 l. 19.

12. prōfluentem: prōfluēns, -en-

tis, part., *running*, lit. *flowing*
forward.

14. ratī: modifying the whole
 phrase uxor liberique. — propin-
 quōs: here, as noun.

15. in: cf. the note on in
 silvās, p. 77, l. 12. — Citeriōrem:
 cf. p. 81, l. 15.

16. illō ipsō: *that particular*.

17. iūstum: iūstus, -a, -um,
regular.

secundum lītus Americae Ulteriōris nāvīgāret, urbēs illius regiōnis adīret multās, incolāsque magnam vim aurī argenti que trādere cogeret.

Līmae duodecim nāvīgia in portū ad ancoram consistēbant; quae cum ille spoliāret, certior factus aliam nāvem gazā onustam haud procul abesse, praedā ē duodecim nāvīgiis cōnfēstim in suum receptā, ē portū statim solvit, summaeque celeritāte coepit īnsequī; dīvitiās enim etiam maiōrēs sē iam captūrum spērābat.

10 Mox in cōspectū erat nāvis fugiēns; quae nullō modō ēvādere potuit, cum Britannī celeritāte tantopere superābant. Nāve trāditā, dīvitiae maximae intus repertae sunt; quīn etiam gubernātor ipse duo pōcula argentea habuisse dicitur. Quae cum praefectus vidisset, gubernātōrī, “Duo
15 pōcula tū habēs,” inquit; “alterum mihi dandum est.” Tum gubernātor miser, quī omnia trādenda plānē intellegēbat, īvītus praefectō in manūs pōcula trādīdit ambō.

LESSON 71

A Roman Vandal

Quibus rebus admoneor ut dē pessimīs facinoribus Verris, hominis plānē scelerātī, pauca nunc dicam. Nam ille,

4. Līmae: a town name; what case?

7. suum: sc. nāvīgium. — solvit: cf. nāvem solvērunt, p. 61, l. 9.

8. dīvitiās: dīvitiae, -ārum, F., *treasures*.

10. fugiēns: cf. fugientēs, p. 69, l. 24.

11. cum: causal. — celeritāte: for syntax, cf. animō, p. 37, l. 20. — tantopere: cf. p. 73, l. 7.

12. dīvitiiae: cf. l. 8.

13. gubernātor: cf. gubernāculum. — ipse: *even*.

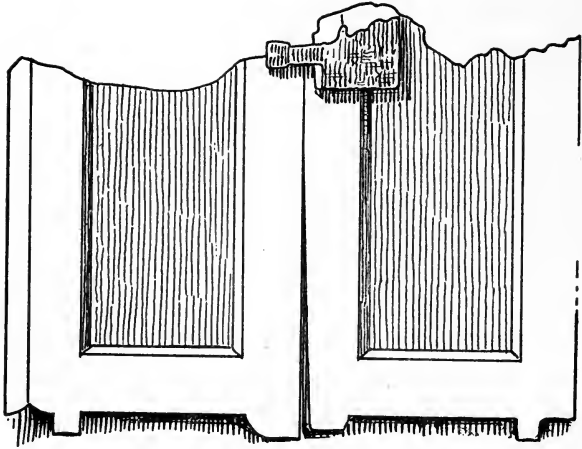
15. alterum: *one* (of the two).

16. trādenda: sc. esse. — plānē: *full well*.

17. praefectō: dat. case; translate as if a genitive.

19. hominis: in apposition with Verris. — plānē: *utterly*; cf. the rendering in the note on l.

16. — pauca: note the gender.



FORĒS

These remnants of a house door serve to show why the word for "door" is plural in Latin. Roman house doors were arranged almost always to open inward rather than outward; on the inside there was a more or less primitive lock or bolt, and sometimes a bar too was used.

cum praetor in Siciliā esset, omnibus locīs oppida templa-
que spoliāvit; quīn etiam tantae erat avāritiae, ut nē pau-
perrimī quidem Siculī bona vidēre posset, quīn statim ea
possidēre vellet. Interdum autem ā suis comitibus est
5 ēlūsus.

Sicut memoriae trāditum est eum ōlim certiōrem factum
cuidam Siculō esse duo pōcula argentea; quō audītō, etsī
aedēs eiusdem hominis nūper spoliātae erant, nūntium
statim mīsīt, quī pōcula ad sē sine morā dēferri iubēret.
10 Siculus igitur, veritus nē sibi malum accideret maius, cōn-
fēstim cum pōculis ad praetōrem profectus est. Quō ubi
pervēnit, praetor forte iam quiescēbat; sed ante forēs amb-
ulābant quīdam ex ipsius amicīs, hominēs improbī, quōrum
tamen cōnsiliō ille multum ūtī cōnsuēverat: quī Siculō
15 statim, "Ubi sunt pōcula?" inquirunt. Tum homō miser
primō querī coepit bona omnia sibi ēripī, deinde eōs vehe-
menter hortātus est ut sibi auxiliō essent. Quō audītō, illi
"Quantum nobīs dabis," inquirunt, "sī pōcula tibi nōn ēri-
pientur?" Tum Siculus spē ērēctus, praemium satis ma-

1. praetor (-ōris, M.): (*as*)
governor. — *templa*: see the pic-
ture of a Sicilian temple shown on
p. 96.

2. tantae . . . avāritiae: for
syntax, cf. p. 62, l. 14. — *pauper-*
rimī: pauper, -eris, adj., *poor*.

3. quīn . . . vellet: *without*
wishing, lit. *but that* (quīn) *he*
wanted.

4. possidēre: possideō, 2,
-sēdī, -sessus, *possess*. — *suis*:
note the position of the word. —
est ēlūsus: *was cheated*.

6. memoriae trāditum est: *it*
is recorded, lit. *it is handed down*
to remembrance.

10. malum: *as* noun, modified
by *maius*.

11. ad praetōrem: *to the gov-*
ernor's residence (cf. l. 1).

12. forte: with the verb, render
"chanced to"; cf. the free treat-
ment of *libenter*, p. 77, l. 10.

13. ipsius: *i.e.* *Verris*. — *impro-*
bī: *improbus*, -a, -um, *unprincipled*.

14. ūtī: *freely*, *depend upon*.
— *cōnsuēverat*: cf. p. 76, l. 21.

16. sibi: dat. of disadvantage;
we would say "*from him*."

17. auxiliō: cf. p. 78, l. 5.

18. quantum: *as* noun.

19. ērēctus (-a, -um, part.):
elated, or *inspired*.

gnum pollicitus est, pōculaque brevī domum laetus reportāvit comitēs enim praetōris, cum ille ē somnō experrēctus esset, audācī mendāciō ūsī nōn dubitāvērunt cōfirmāre pōcula sibi nōn digna vidēri, quae in eius mēnsā pōnerentur.

LESSON 72

Indian Vengeance

5 Indī Americānī nōn solum cum colōnis saepe bellum gessērunt, sed inter sē quoque pugnāre cōsuēvērunt ācerimē. Sicut in Britannīā Novā rēx quīdam, nōmine Miantōnimō, diū per īnsidiās cōnātus est interficere Uncam, rēgem finitimū, ut ipse solum duārum nātiōnum rēgnū
10 obtinēret; cum autem ista cōnsilia eum fefellissent omnia, subitō magnō cum exercitū in vicinī finēs quam celerrimē contendit: Uncās vērō, dē eius adventū ab explōrātōribus certior factus, cōpiās coēgerat et sine morā ad pugnam profectus est.

15 Ubi aciēs duae īnstrūctae sunt, Uncās, paulum ante suōs prōgressus, sē velle dīxit solum cum Miantōnimōne sōlō dīmicāre, ut sine dētrimentō cēterōrum rēs dīiudicārī posset. Quod cum ille recūsāret, Uncās cōnsultō in terram prōlapsus est, eiusque mīlitēs, clāmōre sublātō, super ducem

2. experrēctus esset: expergiscor, 3, -perrēctus sum, *wake up*.

3. mendāciō: mendācium, -ī, N., *lie*.— ūsī: translate as if a present.

4. digna . . . quae: with subjunct., *worthy to* (dignus, -a, -um).— mēnsā: mēnsa, -ae, F., *table*.

8. īnsidiās: see the Vocab.

9. duārum: *the two*.

10. fefellissent: from fallō.

12. Uncās: for the declension, cf. the note on Cercās, p. 23, l. 4.

16. velle: *was willing*.— solum: pred. adj. with dīmicāre; what other part of speech has the same form? (cf. l. 5).

17. cēterōrum: we would say "to the others."— dīiudicārī: dīiudicō, 1, *decide*, or *settle*.

18. quod: *this (proposal)*.— ille: Miantonimo.

iacentem sagittās plūrimās coniēcērunt in hostīs; quī repentinā rē perterriti sē cōnfēstim in silvās palūdēsque contulērunt. Quā in fugā periērunt multī, rēxque ab Uncā ipsō captus est. Ab inimicō salutem petere dux victus scilicet nōlēbat, et paulō post secūrī percussus est: quō quidem tempore Uncās, cum inimicum humī moribundum vīdisset, eius umerum sicā appetivisse dicitur, frustumque carnis inde abscisum vultū laetō dēvorāsse; tantae enim saevitiae sunt mōrēs Indōrum.

LESSON 73

A Tale of Brave Women

10 Abhinc multōs annōs, cum in prōvinciīs, quae ad occidentem spectant adhūc rārī essent colōnī, explōrātōrēs quīdam, domō trāns montēs profectī, per regiōnēs ignōtās multa mīlia passuum iter fēcērunt, et postrēmō locum idōneum nactī, procul ab amicīs in ripā pulcherrimī flūminis
15 castellum parvum collocāvērunt; quibus rēbus factis, nūntiōs mīsērunt, quī eōdem mulierēs liberōsque dēdūcerent.

Hiems iam appropinquābat; omnēs tamen cum nūntiīs libenter domō ēgressī sunt, et nāvigiīs parvīs vectī secundō

1. iacentem: *prostrate*; lit. what? — repentinā rē: sc. hāc.

4. ab: *of*.

5. secūrī percussus est: *i.e.* was executed; lit. what?

6. quidem: omit in translation.

7. sicā: abl. of means.

8. inde: *i.e. from it*. — vultū laetō: cf. p. 58, l. 4. — dēvorāsse: for the form, cf. nāvīgāssset, p. 3, l. 1.

10. occidentem: cf. p. 65, l. 1.

12. domō: the acc. and abl. of domus have the construction of town names (cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21).

16. eōdem: bearing the same relation to idem, as eō to is, and quō to quī.

17. omnēs: *i.e.* the women and children.

18. secundō: cf. the force of the prep. secundum, and contrast that of adversō (flūmine).

flūmine ad castellum versus per aquam glaciē impeditam summō labōre contendērunt. Barbarī interim paene cotīdiē ē rīpīs tēla coniciēbant; et postrēmō multī ē colōnōrum numerō exitiālī morbō affectī sunt. Quā rē cōgnitā, hostēs 5 ē rīpā scaphīs audācter prōgressī, nāvīgium cēpērunt quō aegrī vehēbantur, hominēsque miserōs interfēcērunt omnēs.

Tantīs in perīculīs nōn virī solum sed etiam mulierēs virtūtem maximam praestitērunt. Sicut, cum scapha quaedam in saxō absconditō adhaesisset, mulierēs duae exsiluērunt in aquam frīgidam, scaphamque dē saxō dētrūsērunt, cum alterius vir hostēs armīs dēterrēbat. Atque in liburnicā quādam puella vix adulta omnibus salutī fuit; cum enim ab Indīs tēla conicerentur plūrima, virique sē tegere cōnārentur, haec virgō fortis, cum liburnicam vī flūminis 15 ad rīpam dēferri animadvertisset, gubernāculīs arreptis nāvem in cursū tenuit, dōnec vulnerāta est; quīn etiam nētum quidem gemitum ūllum ēdidit, neque ē manibus gubernācula ēlābī passa est.

LESSON 74

The Treasure Seekers

Et hāc et aliīs aetātibus hominēs crēdulī cōnsuēverant in 20 cavernīs maris frūstrā quaerere nāvēs, quae ōlim gazā

6. aegrī: as noun; cf. vulnerātī, etc.

11. alterius: of one (of the two).—vir: husband.

12. adulta: adultus, -a, -um, part., grown up.

13. sē tegere: i.e. get under cover.

14. virgō (-inis, F.): maiden.—cum . . . animadvertisset: translate by a partic. phrase.

15. gubernāculīs: cf. p. 64, l. 9.

16. in cursū: i.e. in the channel.

18. ēlābī: ēlābor, 3, -lapsus sum, slip; cf. prōlābor.

19. et . . . et: cf. p. 7, l. 2.—aetātibus: i.e. temporibus.—crēdulī: crēdulus, -a, -um, credulous.

20. cavernīs: caverna, -ae, F., cavern.

onustae in marī naufragium fēcisse dīcuntur; interdum autem fortūnā prōsperiōre ūsī sunt. Sicut abhinc multōs annōs quīdam negōtiātor, ē Britannīā Novā paucis cum comitibus profectus, ad locum nāvīgāvit longinquum, ubi
5 gaza maxima multīs ante annīs naufragiō āmissa esse dīcēbātur. Quō cum vēnisset, arborem altissimam statim excīdit scaphamque fēcit, quae ad freta finitima explōranda ūsuī esset.

Aliquamdiū nihil repertum est. Ōlim tamen, cum nautae
10 tōtō diē diligenter labōrāvissent ac spē omnī paene sublātā ad nāvem sē dēfessi cōferrent, quīdam ex eis forte submersam animadvertit algam fōrmōsam, cuius pulchritūdine captus servum Indum ē scaphā exsilīre eamque carpere iussit; ille vērō, ubi cum algā sē ex aquā ēmersit, sub marī
15 cōfirmāvit sēsē multa arma vīdisse. Quō auditō, omnēs ecfrenātē gaudēbant, cum sentirent sē iam dēmum nāvīgium invēnisse, quod mēnsēs multōs quaesiverant. Quārē statim in mare exsiluerunt Indi alii; ā quibus brevī ē nāvīgīō lāminae argenteae complūrēs ēlātae sunt. Posterō diē
20 nautae, cum eōdem primā lūce cum praefectō redissent, ē marī vim argenti incrēdibilem ūnā cum gemmīs plūrimīs facile recēpērunt.

1. naufragium: naufragium, -ī, N., *shipwreck* (nāvis + frangō).

2. ūsī sunt: *they have had*.

8. ūsuī esset: see the Vocab.

10. tōtō diē: translate as if acc. — omnī: freely, *entirely*.

11. quīdam: as noun (sing.). — forte: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12. — submersam: submersus, -a, -um, part., *submerged, i.e. under the surface*.

12. algam: alga, -ae, F., *sea-weed*. — fōrmōsam: fōrmōsus, -a,

-um, *graceful*. — pulchritūdine: pulchritūdō, -inis, F., *beauty*.

13. servum: *helper*.

14. sē . . . ēmersit: *emerged, or came up* (ēmergō, 3, -mersī. -mersus).

15. sēsē: *i.e. sē*.

19. lāminae: lāmina, -ae, F., *plate, or strip*.

20. primā lūce: cf. *vespere primō*, p. 77, l. 1.

21. gemmīs: gemma, -ae, F., *jewel*.

LESSON 75

A Dangerous Conspiracy

Ōlim in finibus Indōrum ab Americānis cōstitūta est prōvincia maxima, ex quā pars quaedam etiam nunc Indiāna appellātur. Prōvinciā cōstitūtā rēx Indus, nōmine Tecumsa, quī nē civēs suī brevī patriam tōtam dīmitterent
5 timēre coeperat, omnibus locīs palam dicere nōn dubitāvit sine cōsēnsū omnium nātiōnum Indīs agrum nūllum vēndendum esse; ac postrēmō, conciliis undique convocātis, barbarōs hortātus est ut sē sequerentur hostisque invīsōs ē finibus suīs expellerent.

10 Deinde, cum ad caput prōvinciae lēgātī conveniendī causā iter fēcisset, quamquam in lēgātī aedium vestibulō ipsī comitibusque subsellia posita erant, ibi sedere nōluit: terram enim cōfirmāvit esse Indōrum mātrem, sēque in eā stāre malle; itaque lēgātus ad colloquium in silvam
15 prōgredi coāctus est. Ibi dum colloquuntur, Tecumsa vehementer est irā commōtus, eiusque comitēs secūrīs cōnfestim arripuerunt. Sed Americāni paucī, quī adstābant, statim expediērunt arma, militēsque summā celeritāte ad lēgātum dēfendendum adcurrērunt; quibus rēbus territī,
20 Indī nihil tum ausī sunt. At lēgātus, quī plānē sentiēbat cum barbaris sibi mox dīmicandum esse, cōpiās satis magnās

4. nē: depending on timēre,

1. 5.—tōtam: translate by an adv.

5. omnibus locīs: cf. p. 82, l.

6.

6. cōsēnsū: cōsēnsus, -ūs, M., *concurrēce*.—Indīs: dat. case.

11. vestibulō: vestibulum, -ī, N., *entrance court*.

12. ipsī: Tecumseh.—subsellia: subsellium, -ī, N., *bench*.

17. paucī: *the few*.

18. expediērunt: *i.e. expedivērunt*.—ad . . . dēfendendum: cf. the construction with causā, l. 11.

19. adcurrērunt: adcurrō, 3, -curī, -cursum est, *run up*.

quam celerrimē cōgere coepit. Tecumsa interim, ut omnīs Indōs ad arma vocāret, reliquās gentēs diligenter iam circumibat.

LESSON 76

A Dangerous Conspiracy (Continued)

Priusquam rēx Indus cum sociis redire potuit, lēgātus, sibi initium bellī esse faciendum ratus, cōsiliō callidō ūsus est; nam ex urbe ad pugnam profectus, legiōnēs flūmine adversō pauca milia passuum dūxit, tum subitō in ripam trānsiit alteram. Pūtābat enim (id quod factum est) barbarōs insidiās collocātūrōs eā in ripā, in quā primō iter 10 facere ipse coepisset. Cōpiis igitur flūmen trāductis, sine dētrimentō ūllō contendit ad oppidum, ubi domicilium Tecumsa habēbat.

Cum lēgātus propius accessisset, rēgis frāter, quī tum oppidō praeerat, nūntium mīsit, quī diceret posterō diē 15 Indōs condiōnēs pācis petītūrōs. Itaque Americāni prope oppidum posuērunt castra, armisque expeditis sē somnō dedērunt. At vigiliā circiter quārtā subitō auditus est ululātus Indōrum, quī undique castra iam obsidēbant; quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō, milītēs ē somnō excitātī ignis

5. initium: initium, -ī, N., *beginning*. The whole phrase may be rendered freely, *thinking that he ought to take the initiative in the war*; lit. what?

8. id quod factum est: *as actually proved to be the case*, lit. *the thing which (actually) happened*.

9. eā: modifying ripā. — in quā: *upon (or along) which*.

10. flūmen trāductis: *i.e. trāns*

flūmen ductis (cf. trādō for trānsdō).

11. domicilium: domicilium, -ī, N., *residence*.

14. praeerat: cf. p. 58, l. 12, and the note.

17. vigiliā . . . quārtā: *i.e.* toward morning, the night being divided into four equal watches.

19. quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō: cf. p. 73, l. 11. — ignis: *the (camp) fires*.

cōnfēstim extīnxērunt, nē ab hostibus cōspicī possent. Sic trīs ferē hōrās in nocte obscurā ab Americānīs fortissimē pugnātum est; tum primā lūce, ēruptiōne factā, in fugam coniēcērunt hostīs, oppidumque incendērunt.

5 Oppidō incēnsō Tecumsa, postquam rediit, cōnsilia sua perficere nullō modō potuit; paucīs autem post mēnsibus, cum Americānī Britannīs bellum indixissent, in exercitū Britannicō lēgātus factus est.

LESSON 77

A Quick-Witted Messenger

Ōlim, cum in prōvinciīs, quae ad merīdiem spectant,
 10 Americānī cum Britannīs diū gessissent bellum ac saepe
 superātī essent, dux quīdam Americānus ad imperātōrem
 alium litterās mittere volēbat; at primō reperiri poterat
 nēmō, quī eās dēferre auderet, quod undique hostēs viās
 obsidēbant. Postrēmō autem mulier quaedam, “Ego lit-
 15 terās adferam,” inquit; “quidvis audere mālō, quam domi
 animō morārī suspēnsō.”

Equō adductō, nūntia sine morā cōnscendit, ac, cōnfēstim
 profecta, in itinere ab hostibus intercepta est. Quam cap-
 tam militēs maximā diligentiā custōdiērunt, dōnec mulier
 20 vocārī posset, quae litterās quaereret, sī quae forte nūntiae
 vestimentīs tēctae essent.

Dum vērō mulier exspectātur, nūntia litterās celeriter

1. possent: subject, militēs
 (see p. 91, l. 19).

7. cum . . . indixissent:
 translate by a partic. phrase.—
 Britannīs: translate the dat.
 “upon.”

8. lēgātus: *an officer.*

13. auderet: *would venture.*

15. quam: (*rather*) *than.*

17. nūntia (-ae, F.): *messenger.*

18. captam: *i.e. after her
 capture.*

20. posset: *could.*—sī quae: cf.
 p. 65, l. 2.

perlēgit, cumque eās discerpisset, frāgmenta chartae ēdit
singula. Quae rēs eī salūtī fuit: altera enim mulier, cum
postrēmō vēnisset, nihil scīlicet invenīre potuit; quārē
mīlitēs, veniā contumēliae petītā, nūntiam incolumem abire
5 passī sunt. Illa autem summā celeritāte ad castra Ameri-
cāna contendit, imperātōremque certīorem fēcit dē rēbus
omnibus, quae in litterīs scrīptae erant.

LESSON 78

Fortune favors the Brave

In exercitū Americānō ōlim erat centuriō quīdam, nō-
mine Iasper, quī semper in perīculīs maximīs libenter ver-
10 sābātur. Sicut, cum Britannī castra quaedam oppugnā-
rent, vēxillumque Americānum tēlis abreptum in terram
extrā mūnitiōnēs cecidisset, inter tēla, quae plūrima ho-
stēs coniciēbant, ē castrīs ērūpit ille, vēxillumque arreptum
in vāllō rursus posuit.

15 Ac paulō post, cum cōgnōvisset Americānōs paucōs ā
Britannīs capitis damnātōs Savannam ad mortem dēdūcī,
ūnō cum comite profectus, ad fontem haud procul ab eā urbe
in insidiīs latēbat, ut cīvibus suīs, sī posset, auxiliō esset.
Mox in cōspectum vēnērunt captīvī, quōs mīlitēs decem

1. discerpisset: discerpō, 3,
-cerpsī, -cerptus, *tear up*. —
frāgmenta: frāgmentum, -ī, N.,
bit. — chartae: charta, -ae, F.,
paper.

2. fuit: *proved to be*.

4. contumēliae: translate the
gen. "for" (cf. audāciae, p. 39,
l. 2).

6. contendit: *pushed on*.

9. libenter versābātur: freely,
delighted to be.

11. vēxillum (-ī, N.): *flag*, cf.
the Roman flags shown on p. 162.

12. plūrima: freely, *thick and
fast*.

16. capitis: cf. p. 47, l. 16, and
the note. — Savannam: see the
note on p. 79, l. 21. — ad mortem:
i. e. to execution.

custōdiēbant; ē quibus octō, ubi ad fontem perventum est, armīs sub arboribus relictīs, aquam haurire properāvērunt. Tum Iasper eiusque amīcus ērūpērunt ē latebrīs, duōbusque custōdibus occīsīs militēs cēterōs sē dēdere coēgērunt: 5 deinde cum captīvīs Britannicīs atque cīvibus, quōs servāverant, cōnfēstim ad castra Americāna sē contulērunt.

Haud semper autem Iasperō rēs tam fēliciter ēvērunt; paucīs enim post annīs interfectus est, cum summā audāciā prōcucurrisset ex aciē atque in hostium vāllō vēxillum 10 dēfixisset Americānum.

LESSON 79

Andrew Jackson

Nunc mihi pauca dīcenda sunt dē rēbus gestīs Americānī cuiusdam, nōmine Iacsōnis, quī obscurō locō nātus, postrēmō rei pūblicae prīnceps factus est. Quī adhūc puer in bellō, quod prīmum Britannī cum Americānīs gessērunt, 15 fortiter versātus, unā cum frātre ab hostibus captus, in carcere morbō gravi affectus est. Māter autem brevī efficere potuit ut filiū ambō cum captīvīs Britannīs commūtarentur.

Multīs post annīs, cum Britannī iterum cum Americānīs

1. quibus: *i.e.* militibus.— ad: *near*.

2. haurire: hauriō, 4, hausī, haustus, *draw*.

3. duōbus: *the two*.

7. Iasperō, etc.: cf. the similar phrase, p. 43, l. 16.

8. cum: conjunction.

9. vēxillum: cf. p. 93, l. 11.

12. locō: *station*; for syntax, cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

13. adhūc: (*while*) *still*.— in bellō, quod prīmum: *i.e.* in prīmō bellō, quod.

16. efficere . . . ut: *freely, arrange that*; lit. what?

17. captīvīs: translate as adj.— commūtarentur: commūtō, 1, *exchange*; in connection with this verb, cum may be rendered "for."

19. iterum: *i.e.* from the year 1812 on.

bellum gererent, Indī, quōdam castellō Americanōrum expugnātō, nōn solum armātōs sed etiam mulierēs liberōsque summā crudelitāte occidērunt. Quā caede nūntiātā, Iacsō, dilēctū habitō, quam celerrimē profectus est, ut hostīs coerceret; cumque multa milia passuum iter fēcisset, etsi militēs labōrandō dēfessi semel iterumque negābant sē longius prōgressūrōs, pervēnit postrēmō ad castra munītissima, quae in ripā flūminis Tallapūsae posuerant Indī. Ubi ācritē pugnātum est; castra tamen sūnt capta, hostēsque paene ad ūnum aut ibi periērunt aut in Flōridam fugere coactī sūnt. Victōriā potitus Iacsō summā cōmitāte rēgem Indōrum accēpit, quī equō vectus castra intrāre est ausus petitum ut frūmentō Americānī iuvārent mulierēs liberōsque Indōs, quī in silvīs latentēs famem aegrē iam tolerābant.

LESSON 80

Pirates Ashore

Quondam in marī Atlanticō secundum litus Americānum ultrō citrōque nāvigābant pīratae, quī omnibus locīs nāvēs vel Americānās vel Britannicās spoliābant; ē quibus ūnus, summae audāciae homō, liburnicis praeerat complūribus. Is ōlim oppugnāre cōstituit oppidum longinquum, quod numquam antea spoliātum erat, cuiusque incolae locuplētēs esse dicēbantur.

Sine dētrimentō liburnicae in portum vēnērunt; tum

4. dilēctū: dilēctus, -ūs, M.,
levy.

5. etsi: modifying the preceding clause.

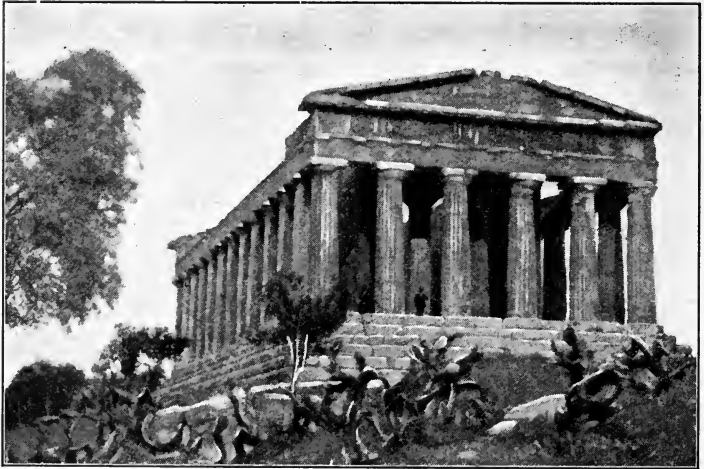
6. labōrandō: gerund.

11. victōriā: the same construction as with ūtor.

13. petitum: supine; another way of saying ut peteret. — frūmentō: (a contribution of) grain.

14. latentēs: in their hiding places: lit. what?

17. nāvigābant: kept sailing.



TEMPLUM

The above building, found in Sicily, is of Grecian architecture. It is known as the Temple of Concord. Roman temples were regularly constructed on Greek models.

autem captivus quidam, qui minus diligenter custodiēbatur, in mare clam exsiluit, ac nandō incolumis pervēnit ad lītus : quī sine morā oppidānōs dē cōsiliis pīrātārum certiōrēs fēcit. Quō nūntiō acceptō, oppidānī summā diligentīā
 5 bona cēlāre coepērunt. Deinde, postquam pīrātae ē nāvibus ēgressī militēs paucōs, quī oppidō erant praesidiō relictī, in fugam coniēcērunt, civēs ipsī, aedibus clausīs, tēla in hostēs primō coniēcērunt plūrima ; sed postrēmō, timōre dētrimentī etiam maiōris coactī, sē maestī dēdidē-
 10 runt. Quōs omnīs pīrātae, victōriā potitī, in templa quaedam coēgērunt. Ubi illi fame sunt paene necātī ; victōrēs enim interim tam bene sē habēbant, ut omnīnō captivōrum miserōrum obliviscerentur.

LESSON 81

Carrying the Tribute

Abhinc multōs annōs Americānī, antequam rēs pūblica va-
 15 lida facta est, tribūtum pendere solēbant cuidam rēgī Africānō, nē pīrātae eārum regiōnum (quī sub eius imperiō erant) nāvēs suās spoliārent. Ōlim, cum praefectus Americānus tribūtī istius ferendī causā ad Āfricam nāvigāset, rēx ille, quī forte nūntium cum dōnō Bȳzantium hōc ferē tempore

1. minus : *not very* ; what use of the compar.?

4. nūntiō : *news, or information.*

5. cēlāre : cēlō, 1, *conceal, or hide.*

6. paucōs : cf. paucī, p. 90, l.

17. — praesidiō : cf. p. 65, l. 4.

10. quōs omnīs : cf. quī omnēs, p. 57, l. 8.

11. coēgērunt : *crowded.* — victōrēs : victor, -ōris, M, *victor.*

12. tam bene sē habēbant : *were having so good a time.*

15. facta est : *freely, had grown.* — pendere : pendō, 3, *pendī, pēnsus, pay.*

16. nē : *so that . . . not.*

19. Bȳzantium : see the note on p. 79, l. 21.

ad rēgem suprēmum mittere volēbat (nam ipse quoque tribūtum pendere cōgēbātur), ab Americānīs postulāvit ut nāve suā hanc rem susciperent. Praefectus scilicet sē nōlle respondit; sed rēx, “Nōne servī estis?” inquit: “nōne 5 tribūtum mihi penditis? Hanc rem mehercle nisi cōnfestim suscipiētis, nāvēs omnēs Americānae, quae in marī Mediterrāneō nāvigant, ā pirātīs statim capientur.” Praefectus igitur animō haud aequō B̄yzantium proficisci coactus est: ubi autem rēx suprēmus Americānōs summō accēpit honōre; 10 cumque discēderent, ducī etiam dedit diplōma.

Cum nāvis paucīs post diēbus ad lītus Āfricae rursus appulsa esset, rēx Āfricānus, quī iam oblītus erat sē pollicitum esse nihil amplius ab Americānīs postulātum irī, praefectum iussit iterum B̄yzantium nāvigāre; cumque id 15 recūsāret, etiam mortem praesentem minātus est. Tum praefectus diplōma porrēxit; quō visō, tantus timor rēgis animum occupāvit, ut veniā contumēliārum petītā Americānōs sine morā redire domum paterētur.

LESSON 82

A Successful Ambuscade

Eō tempore, quō colōnī cum Philippō, rēge Indōrum 20 clārō, bellum gerēbant, oppidō quōdam ā barbarīs incēnsō,

1. rēgem suprēmum: *i.e.* the Sultan.

2. pendere: cf. p. 97, l. 15.—
ab: *of*.

4. nōne: *i.e.* nōn + ne: this combination assumes the answer “yes.”

5. mehercle: interjection, *by my halidom*; lit. (*so help*) *me, Hercules*.

8. B̄yzantium: translate the acc. “for”; cf. p. 97, l. 19.

10. diplōma: acc. sing. of diplōma, -atis, N., *passport*.

13. postulātum irī: what in-
fin.?

15. recūsāret: *object to*; sub-
ject, praefectus. — minātus est:
minor, I, *threaten*.

16. diplōma: cf. l. 10.

17. contumēliārum: cf. p. 93,
l. 4, and the note.

19. quō: *when*, lit. *during which*.

magna vīs frūmentī ab eis integra in agrīs relicta est. Quō cōgnitō, imperātor colōnōrum, tantam frūmentī cōpiam nōn temerē dīmittendam ratus, ab oppidō fīnitimō lēgātum cum militibus proficīscī iussit, ut frūgēs ad bellī sēdem reportāret. 5 Ille igitur iūmenta carrōsque statim coēgit multōs, ac cōnfestim in agrōs illōs contendit; ubi nūllō impediēte frūmentum omne in carrōs sine morā impositum est.

Postquam tamen cōpiās redūcere coepit, lēgātus silvās veritus (per quās tria mīlia passuum iter faciendum erat) 10 militēs primō armīs expeditīs prōgredi iussit. Cum vērō agmen ē silvā incolume ēvāsisset, omnia perīcula suōs iam effūgisse arbitrātus, viā minus diligenter explorātā, in insidiās subitō incidit, quās hostēs fēcerant in palūde quādā, per quam rīvus parvus fluēbat. Quem ad locum 15 ubi perventum est, repente audītus est undique ululātus Indōrum, tēlaque plūrima inmissa sunt. Quā rē novā permōtī militēs nūllō modō resistere potuerunt, praesertim cum numerō barbari multō essent superiōrēs. Quīn etiam ē proeliō colōnī vix septem octōve effūgērunt; quārē propter 20 clādem ibi acceptam hic locus postea “rīvus cruentus” appellābātur.

LESSON 83

An Intrepid Commander

Eōdem bellō quīdam colōnī in scaphis olīm eō cōnsiliō profecti sunt, ut cum Indīs fīnitimīs aut pācem facerent,

3. fīnitimō: *i.e.* to the burned town.

4. frūgēs: frūx, frūgis, F., *fruit* (of the earth); pl., *crop*. — bellī sēdem: *i.e.* the base of operations.

5. iūmenta: iūmentum, -ī, N., *beast of burden*. — multōs: see the note on ratī, p. 82, l. 14.

12. arbitrātus, etc.: use but one part. in the English sentence.

13. incidit: incidō, 3, -cidī, *fall into* (in + cadō).

14. rīvus: *brook*.

19. octōve: *i.e.* octō + ve.

22. eōdem bellō: for syntax, cf. primō bellō, p. 62, l. 15.

aut eīs indicerent bellum, sī Philippum adiuvāre persevērarent. E scaphīs ēgressī, per agrōs contendēbant colōnī, cum subitō ululātus audītus est, et barbarī impetū repentinō militēs ad litūs sē recipere coēgērunt: nam in 5 eō quoque proeliō Indī numerō erant multō superiōrēs; dux enim colōnōrum quīndecim tantum militēs sēcum tum habēbat.

Is autem, vir summae cōstantiae, locum idōneum nactus, suōs hortātus est nē sē animō dēmitterent, et ipse 10 ācritter dīmīcāvit. Dum rēs sic geritur, animadvertit forte ūnum ē comitibus ita territum, ut nūllō modō pugnāre posset. Quō visō, hominem iussit lapidēs comportāre, quī prō mūnitiōne ūsuī essent: quod cum iste faceret, sagitta subitō lapidem percussit, quem manibus 15 ferēbat; quō mirāculō permōtus (nam vītā ā dīs ita servātā esse existimābat), animōs homō resūmpsit, summāque virtūte ūnā cum cēterīs pugnāvit.

Brevī tēla colōnōrum dēficere coepērunt; sed nāvis adventū opportūnō servātī sunt. Dux tamen, cum nōllet 20 Indōs putāre sē timōre discessisse, etiam tum in agrīs paulum morātus est ad petasum petendum, quem ad fontem paulō ante reliquerat.

1. eīs: cf. the note on Britan- nīs, p. 92, l. 7.

4. ad: *toward*.

8. locum: *position*.

9. animō: for syntax, cf. the more familiar phrase, animō dēmissus.

11. forte: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

12. quō: neut. — lapidēs: lapis, -idis, M., *stone*.

13. prō: *as*, or *for*. — ūsuī: cf. p. 89, l. 8. — essent: note the

mood. — iste: the soldier.

14. manibus: cf. p. 7, l. 9.

15. mirāculō: mirāculum, -ī, N., *providence*, lit. *strange happening*.

16. animōs: *courage*. — resūmpsit: resūmō, 3, -sūmpsi, -sūmptus, *recover*.

19. cum nōllet: translate by a partic. phrase.

20. timōre: abl. of cause.

21. petasum: petasus, -ī, M., *broad-brimmed hat*.

LESSON 84

Burned at the Stake

Dē crūdēlitāte Indōrum multa narrantur. Sicut, cum oppidum colōnōrum quoddam ā Gallīs barbarisque esset expugnātum, ampliusque quīnquāgintā oppidānī captī essent, hostēs cum captīvis miseris cōnfestim domum cōtendērunt. Dum autem iter faciunt, ūnus ē captīvis, homō obēsus, quī onus grave ferre coāctus tardius sequēbātur, sē posse clam effugere ratus, onus subitō in viā dēposuit atque in arbore cavā latēre cōnātus est.

Hic autem ab Indīs brevī repertus, veste dētractā per
 10 nivem nūdus prōgredi est coāctus; quō modō usque ad noctem iter factum est. Tum barbarī, captīvō ad arborem religātō, ignem pedetemptim admovēbant, dōnec homō moribundus vīsus est; deinde rursus paulum redūcēbant, quō diūtius cruciārētur. Quin etiam, nē hōc quidem
 15 contentī, frūsta abscidērunt vīscerum, ut cruciātū captīvī oculōs suōs pāscerent, cum interim canerent aut saltārent rīdentēs; et postrēmō, nē contumēlia ūlla deesset, corpus

3. **amplius**: *i.e. more (than)*; cf. such expressions as "above a thousand."

6. **obēsus** (-a, -um): *stout*. — **tardius**: absol. compar.

7. **onus**: onus, -eris, N., *load*.

9. **hīc**: the adv. — **veste**: *i.e. vestimentō*.

11. **iter factum est**: translate by an active form.

12. **ignem**: *the fire*. — **admovēbant**: *kept moving up*.

13. **redūcēbant**: sc. **eum** (*i.e. ignem*). For the force of this imperfect, cf. **rapiēbant**, p. 7, l. 17.

14. **quō**: replacing **ut**, as it regularly does when the purpose clause contains a comparative. — **cruciārētur**: **cruciō**, 1, (*keep in*) *torture*. — **hōc**: (neut.) noun.

15. **contentī**: **contentus**, -a, -um, with abl., *content (with)*. — **frūsta**: not **frūstrā**. — **vīscerum**: **vīscus**, -eris, N., (sing. and pl.) *flesh*.

16. **pāscerent**: **pāscō**, 3, **pāvī**, **pāstus**, with abl., *feast . . . (upon)*. Strictly, **cruciātū** is abl. of means.

17. **deesset**: what is the literal force of the word (**dē** + **sum**)?

mortuū in favillam residere passī sunt, quō posteā maiōre amīcī dolōre afficerentur, cum eius cāsū vidērent miserri-
mum.

LESSON 85

An Early Morning Surprise

Ōlim Gallī Indīque castellum quoddam hieme expugnāre
5 cōstituerant. Quārē per nivem altam summō labōre prō-
gressī, nocte intempestā in silvā haud procul ab oppidō
castra collocāvērunt; deinde, impedimentīs praesidiō pau-
cīs relictīs, vigiliā quārtā ferē exāctā ad mūnitiōnēs pede-
temptim accessērunt. Nam per nivem gelū rigidam iter iam
10 faciendum erat, timēbantque nē sonus ā colōnis audirētur;
quam ob rem ab imperātōre iussī erant paulum prōgredi,
tum paulum stāre, tum iterum paulum prōgredi, ut strepi-
tus exercitūs per nivem iter facientis sonus tantum ventō-
rum vidērētur. At nihil suspicābantur colōnī; quīn etiam
15 custōdēs ipsī somnō gravissimō quiēscēbant. Itaque hostēs
facillimē in castellum pervēnērunt; nix enim ūnā ex parte
tam alta fuit, ut mūnitiōnēs vix exstārent. Tum dēmum,
ululātū ācrī sublātō, barbarī colōnōs perterritōs cōnfestim dē-
trāxērunt ē lectīs, et undique caedēs incendiaque miscuērunt.

1. mortuū: as noun (gen. masc.). — favillam: favilla, -ae, F., embers. — residere: resīdō, 3, -sēdī, sink down. — quō: cf. p. 101, l. 14. — maiōre: (all the) greater.

2. amīcī: nom. pl.

4. hieme: abl. of time when or within which.

7. paucīs: as (masc.) noun.

8. exāctā: from exigō; construe with vigiliā, and cf. the note on p. 91, l. 17.

9. gelū: gelus, -ūs, M., frost. —

rigidam: rigidus, -a, -um, crusted, lit. stiff.

10. nē: note the nature of the governing verb.

13. facientis: modifying exercitūs. — sonus: pred. nom. with vidērētur (sc. esse). — tantum: the adv.

16. ūnā ex parte: cf. omnibus ex partibus, p. 44, l. 6.

17. exstārent: exstō, 1, —, —, project, or appear (above).

19. caedēs, etc.: cf. p. 78, l. 9.

In castellō praedā multā hostēs potīti sunt atque ad vesperum, caede incendiisque aliquandō dēfessī, sē ad silvam contulērunt. Victōria tamen nōn incruenta parta erat: nam intrā castellum erant complūra tēcta minōra; 5 quōrum ūnum cum barbarī expugnāre frūstrā cōnārentur, tēlis inde coniectis multī interfectī erant.

LESSON 86

Some Very Distinguished Geese

Quibus rēbus admoneor dē impetū, quem Gallī antīquī abhinc multōs annōs in Capitōlium fēcērunt, cum exercitūs vicissent Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendissent. Primō 10 interdiū hostēs adortī sunt, summāque audāciā saxa aspera ascendērunt; sed Rōmānī dēsUPER eōrum aciem tam facile tantāque caede dēiēcērunt, ut numquam posteā idem audērent.

Deinde autem, cum multōs diēs Capitōlium obsessum 15 esset nec praesidium (quamquam summa erat cibī inopia) sē dēdere vellet, noctū Capitōlium oppugnāre hostēs cōstituērunt. Itaque sēmitā asperā, quam paucīs ante diēbus

1. praedā: for syntax, cf. vic-tōriā, p. 95, l. 11. — ad: toward.

2. aliquandō: i.e. dēmum.

3. incruenta: incruentus, -a, -um, lit. bloodless; translate freely. — parta erat: from pariō.

5. quōrum: neut.

7. Gallī: as on p. 52, l. 12. — antīquī: antīquus, -a, -um, ancient.

8. cum: after. — exercitūs: note the ū.

9. ipsam: proper. The Romans were so demoralized that

they made no attempt to hold any part of Rome other than the lofty and isolated Capitol.

10. interdiū: in contrast to noctū, l. 16. — hostēs: subject of the verb.

11. dēsUPER: adv., from above.

12. idem audērent: repeated the venture; lit. what?

14. deinde: later.

15. nec: and yet . . . not.

17. sēmitā: abl. of way by which (sēmita, -ae, F., footpath).

Gallus quidam forte animadverterat, tertiā ferē vigiliā ūnus miles inermis paulum ascendit; cui deinde arma trādita sunt. Is sequentēs adiuuābat, illi rursus aliōs. Quō modō Gallī complūrēs ad summum collem tantō silentiō pervēnērunt, ut custōdēs nihil sentirent; quīn etiam nē canēs quidem excitātī sunt. Sed repente ānserēs Iūnōnis sacri clangōrem clārum ēdidērunt: quae rēs Rōmānis salūtī fuit; nam M. Mānlius, vir summae cōstantiae, sonō ācrī auditō, comitēs ad arma vocāns cōnfēstim in primum Gallum impetum fēcit ācerrimum, eumque dē saxō prōiēcit. Gallus cāsū suō aliōs quoque dēturbāvit; et hostēs, magnō dētrimentō acceptō, etiam hōc cōnātū dēsistere coāctī, in castra maestī sē recēpērunt.

LESSON 87

An Army of Two

Longum est cōnsilia nārrāre, quibus ūsī sunt colōnī eis in bellīs, quae cum Britannīs et Indīs gessērunt. Sicut ōlim, cum per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsē nāvis Britannica adversō flūmine nāvigāret, in ripā forte stābant liberī duo; quī veritī nē, sī agricolās armātōs exspectāssent, auxilium

2. *inermis* (-is, -e): *without* (his) arms, lit. *unarmed*.

3. *sequentēs*: acc. masc., *those following*. — *illi*: supply a verb from the preceding clause.

4. *summum*: *the top of*; cf. the use of *primā*, p. 22, l. 7.

6. *ānserēs*: *anser*, -eris, M., *goose*. — *sacrī*: *sacer*, -era, -erum, with gen., *sacred* (to). — *clangōrem*: *clangor*, -ōris, M., *cry*.

7. *ēdidērunt*: from *ēdō* (not *edō*).

8. *M.*: *i.e. Mārcus*.

11. *cāsū*: *fall*. — *dēturbāvit*: *dēturbō*, I, *carry off* (one's) feet.

12. *cōnātū dēsistere*: cf. p. 21, l. 3.

14. *longum est*: *'twould be a long* (tale); cf. the similar idiomatic use of the present indicative of *possum*, e.g. p. 41, l. 7.

17. *forte*: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

18. *exspectāssent*: *should wait for*; lit. *should have waited for*.

sērō adferrētur, cōstituērunt, sī possent, Britannōs ipsī dēterrēre.

Post domum, quae in prōmunturiō posita erat, silva erat parva. Itaque liberī, cum ad aedēs cucurrissent, armīs cōnfēstim arreptīs, portā posticā in silvam clam ēgressī sunt; tum autem palam ē silvā in aedēs cum armīs prope-rāvērunt. Quod idem cum saepius fēcissent, Britannī, quī cōnspiciēbant procul nec quicquam plānē vidēre poterant, manum magnam in aedēs convēnisse ratī, pedetemptim tamen prōgredi persevērāvērunt: dum vērō praeter prōmunturium nāvīgant, subitō alter ex liberīs inmīsīt tēlum ac gubernātōrem graviter vulnerāvit; quī cum prōlapsus gubernācula ē manibus dīmīssisset, nāvis ē cursū flūmine secundō ferrī coepta est. Quam ob rem Britannī, sē sic omnīs interficī posse arbitrātī, animō minimē aequō sē recēpērunt ad oppidum, unde nūper profectī erant.

LESSON 88

Horatius at the Bridge

Quae rēs memorābilis mē admonet dē facinore similī sed maiōre, quod Rōmae antīquitus ab Horātiō quōdam factum esse trāditur. Cum enim bellum ā rēge Porsinnā esset Rōmānis indictum, Iāniculum impetū repentinō captum est

1. sērō: adv., *late*; in this context, *too late*.

3. domum: (*their*) *home*. — posita erat: *had been built*.

5. portā: *door*; for syntax, cf. sēmītā, p. 103, l. 17. — posticā: posticus, -a, -um, *back*.

7. idem: note the gender, and cf. p. 103, l. 12. — saepius: *over and over again*; what use of the compar.?

8. quicquam: neut. of quisquam (cf. p. 2, l. 11).

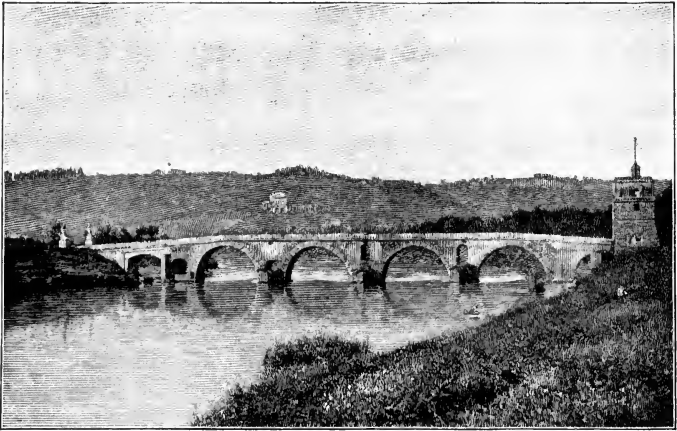
11. alter ex: *one of* (the two).

13. secundō: cf. p. 87, l. 18.

14. coepta est: cf. the note on coeptus est, p. 66, l. 12.

18. Rōmae: note that this is a town name.

20. Iāniculum: a hill on the west bank of the Tiber, opposite Rome.



PONS

Until the second century B.C., the only bridge across the Tiber at Rome was of wood. Afterward several stone bridges were built, one of which is shown above.

Rōmānique perterriti trāns Tiberim in urbem quam celerimē fugere coepērunt. Tum Horātius, quī sentiēbat hostēs, nisi pōns esset perruptus, urbe quoque statim potītūrōs, civis suōs hortātus est ut pontem ignī ferrōque perrumperent, cum ipse impetum hostium sōlus sustinēret.

Itaque cum duōbus amicis fidēlibus, quōs pudor eum dēserere nōn patiēbātur, ad primum aditum pontis fortiter prōgressus, audācissimē ibi cōstitit. Quā audāciā obstupēfacti, hostēs primō paulum morātī sunt, deinde impetum
10 ācriōrem fēcērunt; Horātius vērō, minās contumēliāsque vōciferāns, summā virtūte dīmīcābat, nec locō cessit priusquam post tergum pōns perruptus est. Tum in Tiberim armātus dēsiluit, et ad rīpam alteram incolumis pervēnit, quō paulō ante, exiguā parte pontis adhūc relictā, amicōs
15 duo sē recipere coēgerat.

Sic memoriae trāditum est; Līvius autem (ā quō haec nārrantur) facinus hoc apud posterōs plūs glōriae quam fidei habuisse palam cōfītētur.

1. quam celerrimē: translate freely.

3. pōns (pontis, M.): *bridge*. — esset perruptus: cf. expectās-sent, p. 104, l. 18; for mood, cf. admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

4. ferrō: ferrum, -ī, N., *iron*; freely, *the ax*.

5. cum: *while*.

6. pudor (-ōris, M.): *shame*.

7. patiēbātur: we would say "would not allow"; cf. vidēbant, p. 36, l. 7. — aditum: aditus, -ūs, M., *approach*. — pontis: cf. l. 3.

8. obstupēfacti: obstupēfactus, -a, -um, part., *amazed*.

10. minās: minae, -ārum, F.: *threats*.

11. vōciferāns: vōciferor, 1, *shout out*. — dīmīcābat: *fought on*. — locō: cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

13. dēsiluit: dēsiliō, 4, -siluī, *leap down*.

14. quō: the adv.; cf. p. 47, l. 2. — exiguā parte, etc.: translate by a "while" clause.

16. memoriae, etc.: cf. p. 85, l. 6, and translate freely. — haec: neuter.

17. apud posterōs: *i.e. in the following generations*; lit. what? — plūs: see multus. — glōriae: partitive gen.

18. cōfītētur: cōfīteor, 2, -fessus sum, *admit*.

LESSON 89

A Favor Repaid

Ōlim Indus ignōtus in dēversōrium ēsuriēns vēnit; cum autem diū frūstrā vēnātus erat, cibum emere nōn potuit. Sed colōnus quīdam, quī animadverterat fame hominem esse paene cōfectum, caupōnam iussit cibum dare, ipseque
5 pecūniam solvit. Indus colōnō grātiās maximās ēgit pollicitusque est sē semper beneficium memoriā custōditūrum.

Paucīs post annīs colōnus ipse ab Indīs captus est et in Canadam dēductus; ubi ā dominō in silvās saepe lignātiōnis causā missus est. Ōlim, cum procul ab aedibus labōrāret,
10 subitō in cōspectum vēnit Indus quīdam, quī eum hortātus est ut paulō post in locum certum ad colloquium venīret. Colōnus haud invītus pollicitus est; tum insidiās veritus cōsiliū mūtāvit, neque ad locum vēnit cōstitutum. Paucīs post diēbus Indus eum iterum convēnit, iterumque
15 hortātus est ut aliō diē ad locum dēstinātum iret.

Quō ubi perventum est, Indus sē sequī iussit, ac per silvās celeriter profectus est. Alter, etsi timor eius occupābat animum, finemque itineris omnīnō nesciēbat, est tamen secūtus; cumque diēs multōs per silvās iter fēcissent, post
20 strēmō ad oppidum pervēnerunt, quod colōnus laetus ut suum cōgnōvit. Tum dux, "Ego is sum," inquit, "quem tū abhinc multōs mēnsis cibō iūvistī. Hōc modō referō grātiām."

1. ēsuriēns (-entis, part.):
hungry. — cum: *inasmuch as*.

4. cōfectum: *exhausted*. —
caupōnam: *caupōna, -ae, F., mistress of (the) inn*.

8. lignātiōnis: cf. the use of the gerundive with causā to express purpose.

14. Indus: *the Indian*.

15. dēstinātum: *dēstinātus, -a, -um, designated*.

16. sē: *obj. of sequī*.

17. eius: *modifier of animum*.

18. finem: *contrast finēs*.

20. ut suum: *as his own*.

21. is: *the man*.

22. grātiām: *contrast the meaning of grātiās, l. 5*.

LESSON 90

An Earthquake in Colonial Times

Cum iam colōnī plūrimī Britanniam Novam incolēbant, ōlim noctū, dum hominēs ferē omnēs somnō gravi quiēscunt, repente mōtus terrae maximus factus est. Sonō horrendō ad auris adlātō, colōnī graviter permōtī ē lectīs cōnfēstim
 5 exsiluērunt, tēcta ratī undique labefactārī; quīn etiam erant quī timērent nē vēnisset diēs mundi ultima aut certē ades-
 set. Interim in marī nautae mōtum sēnsērunt, crēdēbantque nāvīs suās in saxa abscondita dēlātās esse; in agrīs autem
 bovēs, cum mūgītūs maximōs ēderent, omnis in partēs per-
 10 territī cucurrērunt.

Quīdam cōnfīrmant sē tum vīdisse ignem per terram currere; ac certē quōdam locō erat terrae hiātus, ex quō pulvis levis fūmō similis aliquamdiū efferēbātur. Diēbus
 15 proximīs complūrēs cōnsecūtī sunt mōtūs, sed minōrēs; multique hominēs, quī adhūc religiōnem sprēverant, prop-
 ter timōrem ad cultum deōrum sē convertērunt. Trāditum quoque est, aquam cuiusdam fontis, quī terrae mōtū humi
 dēpressus erat, postea hieme interdum glaciem factam

3. mōtus (-ūs, M.): lit. *movement*.

5. labefactārī: labefactō, I, *shake down*.—erant quī: *there were (some) who*. The subjunctive is used regularly after any tense of sunt quī or nēmō est quī.

6. mundi: mundus, -ī, M., *the world*.

8. autem: *moreover*.

9. cum . . . ēderent: note the ē, and translate by a partic. phrase.—mūgītūs: mūgītus, -ūs, M., *bel-
 lowing*.

11. quīdam: here, noun.—per: *along*.

12. hiātus (-ūs, M.): with gen., *cleft (in)*, lit. *yawning (of)*.

13. levis (-is, -e): *light (of weight)*.—efferēbātur: *i.e. kept rising*; lit. *what?*

16. cultum: cultus, -ūs, M., *worship*.

17. humi: *into the ground*; what is the commoner meaning?

18. dēpressus erat: dēprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus, *sink*.—glaciem factam esse: *i.e. froze solid*.

esse, quamquam antea omni tempore anni uberius fluere consueverat.

LESSON 91

Evils of the Slave Trade

Gentes, quae Africam incolunt, quondam inter se saepe dimicabant, captivique a negotiatoribus empti, navibus in terris sunt transportati diversas, ubi dominis novis traditi summis laboribus aetatem in agris agebant. Dum autem navigant, condicio captivorum miserrima erat; nam traditum est dominos, qui quaestum volebant facere quam maximum neque aliud curabant, valitudinē salutique servorum operam minimam dedisse.

Qui igitur miseri in locis angustiis foedisque procul a luce caelique spiritum saepe cludebantur. Quin etiam interdum, ut nave quam plurimos portarent, inter se vinculis iuncti, supini dies noctesque iacere coacti sunt, spatio minimo tantum relictō, ubi pauci vice alternā se exercere possent: quorum cruciatus, tempestate coacta, maximus erat; tum enim foris omnibus clausis vix respirare poterant, multique

1. quamquam: *whereas*. — uberius: adv. (positive not in use), *very freely*.

4. navibus: *by ship*.

6. laboribus: translate as sing. — aetatem: cf. vitam with the same verb, p. 61, l. 13. — dum . . . navigant, etc.: *freely, it was, however, while they were on shipboard, that, etc.*

9. aliud: *anything else*.

11. qui . . . miseri: *the poor wretches*. — locis: *quarters*. — foedis: *foedus, -a, -um, foul*.

12. caeli: (*open*) *air*. — spiritū: *spiritus, -ūs, M., breath*.

13. inter se: *i.e. to one another*. — iuncti: *iungō, 3, iūnxī, iūctus, bind*.

15. pauci: *i.e. small groups*. — vice alternā, abl. phrase, *in turn*. — exercere: *exerceō, 2, -uī, -itus, exercise*. — possent: note the mood.

16. quorum: (*but*) *their*. — tempestate coacta: translate by a "when" clause.

17. foris: *forus, -ī, M., gangway*. — respirare: *respirō, 1, breathe*.

moriēbantur. Quō modō saepe factum est ut vīvī, vinculis retentī, inter mortuōs iacere cōgerentur, dōnec posterō diē nautae solverent mortuōs corporaque in mare abicerent.

LESSON 92

A Pirate Outdone

Illis temporibus, cum servī plūrimī ex Āfricā in terrās 5 dīversās trānsportārentur, saepe in marī coniūrātiōnem inter sē nautae fēcērunt, dominōque nāvis aut coniectō in vincula aut interfectō, ducem novum ipsī dēligēbant; quō modō pīrātae factī secundum lītus Āfricae ultrō citrōque nāvīgābant et nāvēs gentium spoliābant omnium.

10 Quōrum ē numerō quīdam in portum ōlim vectī longinquum, ubi in litore collocāta erant castra parva Britannica, lēgātum tēla aurumque ē castrīs ad sē mittere summā superbiā iussērunt. Ille vērō, vir maximae cōstantiae, aurum respondit sē nōn datūrum esse, sed tēla libenter mis-
15 sūrūm, sī eōrum nāvis propius accessisset. Tum pīrātae irā commōtī castra ācerrimē adortī sunt, ac lēgātus Britanicus, postquam tēla dēfēcērunt ē castrīs sē recipere coāctus, postrēmō ab hostibus captus est; quī eum cum custōdibus cōnfēstim ad ducem misērunt. Iste scīlicet

1. moriēbantur: cf. rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17.—factum est ut: cf. p. 74, l. 15.

3. solverent . . . abicerent: translate both the subjunctives "should."

5. marī: *the high seas.*

8. pīrātae: predicate nom.

9. nāvēs: *commerce.*

10. ē: *of.*

12. aurum: do not confuse aurum with auris.

14. libenter: cf. the note on p. 93, l. 9.

15. accessisset: cf. *esset per-*ruptus, p. 107, l. 3.

16. irā commōtī: *freely, filled with wrath.*

18. cum custōdibus: *i.e. under guard.*—ducem: (*their*) chief.

hominem horrendis exsecrationibus accēpit, quod animō tam obstinātō rēsistere ausus erat; lēgātus autem minimē territus audācter respondit atque etiam maiōribus exsecratiōnibus quam dux ipse ūsus est. Quae rēs eī salūtī fuit; 5 nam pīrātae cēterī, novā rē dēlectātī, cachinnōs sustulērunt maximōs et ultrō vitam hominī concessērunt, quod male dicendō ducem ipsum superāre potuerat.

LESSON 93

Colonization in Africa

Americānī Britannīque, cum dēmum plānē coepissent cōgnōscere mala, quae ab emptiōne servōrum oriuntur, 10 colōniās in Āfricam statuērunt dēducendās esse, in quās libertinī mitterentur; illisque temporibus erant etiam quī servōs ferē omnēs postrēmō sic in patriam redūcī posse existimārent.

Colōniae, quae primō sunt eō dēductae, nōn erant validae, 15 et saepe cum incolīs Āfricānīs pugnandum erat. Sicut ōlim, cum colōnī quīdam prōmunturiō īnsulāque emptis

1. exsecratiōnibus: exsecratiō, -ōnis, F., curse.

5. novā rē: at the unexpected turn (of events); abl. of cause. — dēlectātī: dēlectātus, -a, -um, part., highly amused, lit. delighted. — cachinnōs: cachinnus, -ī, M., roar of laughter.

7. dicendō: abl. of specification.

9. mala: as (neut.) noun; cf. the somewhat similar use of the neut. bona. — emptiōne servōrum: freely, traffic in slaves; lit. what?

— oriuntur: orior, 4, ortus sum, arise (cf. corior).

10. in Āfricam . . . dēducendās esse: freely, ought to be planted in Africa.

11. libertinī: libertinus, -ī, M., freedman. — mitterentur: note the mood.

12. patriam: i.e. (their) rightful country. — posse: could.

13. existimārent: cf. the note on erant quī, p. 109, l. 5.

14. eō: the adv.; for meaning, cf. quō, p. 107, l. 14.

oppidum parvum in litore condidissent, nātiōnēs proximae molestē ferēbant peregrīnōs illīc cōnsēdisse; verēbantur enim nē iūra sua vetera āmitterent, emptiōque servōrum (quā ex rē quaestum magnum faciēbant) mox tōta reprimētur. Quārē, armātis undique convocāis, in oppidum colōnōrum repente impetum fēcērunt ācerrimum. Intrā mūnitiōnēs erant dux aeger et trīgintā quīnque tantum hominēs, quī arma ferre possent; at illī, cum in proeliō quīndecim ex ipsōrum numerō aut vulnerātī aut interfectī essent, hostēs praedā occupātōs postrēmō in fugam coniecērunt. Paucīs autem post diēbus oppugnātiō ā barbarīs redintegrāta est; quī nē tum quidem rem bene gessērunt. Itaque, pāce iam dēmum factā, haec quidem colōnia paulātim numerō vīribusque aucta est.

LESSON 94

A Prize Won and Lost

15 Ōlim, cum nāvis longa Americāna per mare Mediterrāneum nāvigāret, nautae procul vēlum vīdērunt; quō vīsō, praefectus, liburnicās pīrātārum haud procul abesse ratus, suōs summā celeritāte īnsequī iussit. Dum autem vēlis rēmisque contendunt, subitō nāvis in saxīs absconditis
20 adhaesit, neque ūllō modō dētrūdī poterat. Quō cāsū

2. molestē ferēbant, etc.: *i.e.* were much wrought up that, etc.
—illīc: adv., there.

4. tōta: translate as if an adv.

6. intrā: *behind*.

8. cum: *after*.

9. ipsōrum: *their*.

10. occupātōs: *busied*.

12. nē . . . quidem: see the Vocab.

13. haec quidem colōnia: *freely,*

this particular colony; lit. what? (Do not confuse quidem with quīdam.)

14. vīribus: contrast the meaning of vīs and vīrēs (see the Vocab.).

19. rēmīs: rēmus, -ī, M., *oar*. Roman ships often had both sails and oars, and vēlis rēmisque came to be a standing phrase for "at full speed."

secundum litus nūntiātō, pīrātae oppugnandī causā undique convēnērunt, et Americānī, etsī, ut nāvem levārent, in mare iēcerant omnia, postrēmō sē dēdere coāctī sunt.

Quā victōriā partā, rēx pīrātārum, veritus nē aliae nāvēs longae oppidum suum oppugnārent, Americānōs miserōs mūnitiōnēs firmāre coēgit, cum interim ā pīrātīs captivī tantā diligentīā custōdiēbantur, ut, quamquam diēs noctēsque dē fugā cōgitābant, rem numquam perficere possent.

Eīs nautīs, quī noctū quoque labōrāre volēbant, pecūniam dedit rēx, cum opera sua vellet quam mātūrrimē perficī; illi autem pecūniam acceptam statim prōfūdērunt, et ēbrii per oppidum vagantēs iniūriās oppidānis saepe intulērunt. Tum mirīs modīs poenās dedisse dīcuntur; hominis enim supīnī sola pedum verberābantur, idque saepe tam vehementer ut sanguis exiret. Interdum autem, pecūniā lictōribus datā, storeīs interpositīs nautae verberābantur, cum interim lēgātus huic reī praepositus (quī tamen extrā forēs carceris morārī solēbat) ex clāmōribus iūdicābat hominēs cruciātūs patī maximōs.

LESSON 95

A Prize Won and Lost (Continued)

Interim pīrātae longam nāvem Americānam dē saxīs dētrūserant; quam ob rem captivī scilicet etiam molestius

1. oppugnandī causā: freely, to the attack. What part of the verb is oppugnandī?

2. levārent: levō, 1, lighten.

10. vellet: he was anxious (that). — mātūrrimē: from mātūrē.

11. prōfūdērunt: prōfundō, 3, fūdī, -fūsus, squander. — ēbrii: ēbrius, -a, -um, intoxicated.

13. mirīs modīs: transl. as sing. — hominis: modifying pedum, l. 14.

14. supīnī: (placed flat) on his back. — sola: solum, -ī, N., sole (of the foot). — verberābantur: verberō, 1, beat. — idque: freely, and that too; strictly, id is subject of fiēbat supplied.

15. sanguis (-inis, M.): blood. — exiret: freely, flowed. — lictōribus: lictor, -ōris, M., policeman.

16. storeīs: storea, -ae, F., mat.

ferēbant nāvem suam in hostium potestātem vēnisse: itaque eōrum dux, Bēnbrigius nōmine, litterās clam mīsit, quibus hortātus est alium praefectum Americānum, quī eōdem in marī nāvigābat, ut cīvibus auxiliō venīret prae-
 5 damque ē manibus hostium ēripere cōnārētur. Ille, litterīs acceptīs, suspiciōnis vītandae causā liburnicam mīsit; quae nocte intempestā portum ingressa, ad nāvem longam cursū tam incertō nāvigāvit, ut pīrātae quī in eā custodiās agēbant, veritī nē liburnica in nāvem inlīderētur, magnā vōce guber-
 10 nātōrī imperārent ut ancorās iaceret. Is autem respondit ancorās āmissās esse.

Quō respōnsō dēceptī, pīrātae liburnicam vagantem propius accēdere patiēbantur, cum subitō ex eā septuāgintā armātī gladiīs dēstrictīs in nāvem longam ascendērunt
 15 atque in hostīs perturbātōs impetum fēcērunt ācerrimum. Pīrātae fortissimē dimicāvērunt; brevī autem paene ad ūnum occīsī sunt. Tum, cum reliquī sē in mare iēcissent, ignēs multīs simul locīs nāvi longae Americānī ipsī admōvē-
 20 runt, quattuorque tantum vulnerātīs, liburnicā salvā ad classem sē recēpērunt.

Paulō post oppidum ipsum classe est oppugnātum, atque invītus rēx pīrātārum captīvōs Americānōs incolumēs abire patī coāctus est.

3. quibus: cf. the note on p. 38, l. 16.

4. cīvibus auxiliō: cf. the same construction with the verb *sum*.

6. liburnicam: this being the type of vessel used by the pirates themselves (cf. p. 113, l. 17).

8. eā: *i.e.* nāve longā.

9. magnā: see the Vocab. for the varied meanings of this adj.

12. respōnsō: noun.—dēceptī:

dēcipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, *throw off (one's) guard*.—vagamtem: *erratic*; lit. what? (cf. *vagantēs*, p. 114, l. 12).—propius: absol. compar., *very close*.

14. dēstrictīs: dēstrictus, -a, -um, part., *drawn*.

19. quattuor: as noun.—salvā: *i.e.* incolumī; translate the abl. by "with."

22. invītus: translate by a phrase.—incolumēs: *scot free*.

LESSON 96

A Mysterious Disappearance

Colōniis multīs iam in Americam dēductīs, Gallī etiam in Indōrum finēs sacerdotēs mittere cōsuēverant, nōn solum ut barbarī ad suam religiōnem converterentur, sed etiam ut illī amicī essent, sī quandō cum Britannīs dimi-
 5 candum esset. Quī hominēs sanctī interdum maximīs in periculīs versābantur; sicut olim in regiōnibus longinquīs, quae postea civitātis Noveborācēnsis pars factae sunt, sacerdotēs complūrēs, quī cum negōtiātōribus paucīs castellum parvum ibi tenēbant, subitō certiorēs factī sunt Indōs pere-
 10 grinōs omnīs occīdere cōstituīsse.

Palam fugere nōn audēbant sacerdotēs, neque eīs ūllae erant nāvēs, quibus ad Canadam veherentur. Itaque clam intrā castellum scaphās facere statim coepērunt; deinde, postquam omnia ad fugam iam sunt parāta, barbarōs ad
 15 convīvium vocāvērunt. Illī convēnērunt laetī; cumque ēdissent omnia, quae sacerdotēs apposuerant, domum regressī in tabernāculīs mox sōpītī iacēbant. Tum Gallī silentiō scaphās ad rīpam portāvērunt, et flūmine secundō ad Canadam versus profectī sunt.

20 Māne Indi vidērunt castellum clausum; quā rē animadversā, primō sacerdotēs vōta facere crēdēbant. Postremō tamen, fenestris ingressī, intus esse nēminem

1. colōniis . . . dēductīs:
 translate by a "when" clause.

4. sī quandō: cf. p. 54, l. 4.

5. sanctī: sānctus, -a, -um, .
pious.

6. versābantur: freely, *were*
exposed (to).

11. eīs: dat. case.

14. omnia: note the gender.

15. convīvium: convīvium, -ī,
 N., *feast.* Cf. the illustration on
 the opposite page.

21. vōta facere: *to be at prayers*
 (vōtum, -ī, N., *prayer*).

22. fenestris: cf. the note on
 p. 76, l. 3.



CONVIVIUM

The Oriental fashion of reclining at meals was much in vogue among the Greeks and Romans. The above illustration is taken from a wall decoration at Pompeii.

timōre maximō sēnsērunt; nesciēbant enim Gallis ūllās esse scaphās, eōsque arte magicā effūgisse iūdicābant.

LESSON 97

Early Days in Liberia

Cum in Āfricā abhinc multōs annōs condita esset rēs pūblica, quae Liberia appellātur, incolae eius regiōnis novae civitātī inimicissimī erant. Nam advenae statuerant emptiōnem servōrum reprimendam esse, Āfrī autem quaestum suum dīmittere nōlēbant.

Ōlim prope colōniam quandam subitō multitudō barbarōrum armātōrum per silvam viam rumpere audīta est. Sed in oppidō arma multa apud sacerdotem quandam condita erant; quī, ūnā cum duōbus fabrīs, quī eīdem in aedibus habitābant, tēla cōnfestim in hostis inmittere coepit, multōsque vulnerāvit. Dux tamen Āfrōrum paucīs cum comitibus fortiter prōgressus iam coepit perrumpere pālōs, quī circum aedēs in terrā dēfixī erant. Illum autem ūnus ex fabrīs statim tēlō interfēcit, barbarīque ceterī, hōc cāsū perterritī, cōnfestim vertērunt terga et quam celerrimē in silvam sē contulērunt. At paulō post, molestē ferentēs ducem mortuum in colōnōrum potestāte relictum, corporis quaerendī

1. timōre maximō: *to their great alarm*; lit. what?

4. Liberia: note the significance of the name (cf. libertās).

6. emptiōnem servōrum: cf. p. 112, l. 9. — reprimendam: translate the gerundive "must."

9. viam: (*their*) way. — rumpere: translate as if a present part. (rumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, lit. break).

10. apud: *at the house of*; what are other meanings of this word?

11. fabrīs: faber, -brī, M., carpenter.

12. tēla . . . inmittere coepit: *opened fire*.

14. pālōs: pālus, -ī, M., stake; pl., *palisade*.

19. in . . . potestāte: *freely, in the hands*. — relictum: sc. esse.

causā rediērunt, summāque virtūte identidem impetum in aedēs fēcērunt ācerrimum, dōnec, cum hōram amplius dīmīcātum esset, subitō proeliō dēstitērunt et rursus maestī in silvam regressī sunt.

LESSON 98

An Experience with Robbers

5 Quondam in rīpis illius flūminis, quī linguā Indōrum pater aquarum appellābātur, pīrātae multī in spēluncīs latēbant, ut nāvīgia spoliārent, quae illīs temporibus mercibus variīs onusta ultrō citrōque nāvīgābant; quīn etiam quōdam locō castra parva fēcērant, ibique summā audāciā
10 nāvēs vel maximās adoriēbantur.

Quem locum ōlim negōtiātor locuplēs, ventum idōneum nactus, vēlīs passīs incolumis est praetervectus; quī autem ad rīpam nāvem suam appellere nōn ausus est, dōnec duo diēs inde adversō flūmine nāvīgāvit. Interim vērō pīrātae,
15 quī nāvem vīderant praetereuntem, nec praedam tam pulchram dīmītere volēbant, rēctā viā per silvam erant secūtī, et locō opportūnō in insidiīs iam latēbant; quī, nāve

1. identidem: adv., *time and again*.

2. hōram amplius: cf. p. 101, l. 3, and the note.

3. proeliō: cf. p. 69, l. 17.

5. quī: for gender, cf. quod, p. 30, l. 6. — linguā: we would say, "in the language."

6. spēluncīs: spēlunca, -ae, F., *cave*.

7. mercibus: merx, mercis, F., (sing. and pl.) *merchandise*.

9. ibi: *at that point*.

10. vel: *even*. — maximās: *of the largest size*.

12. nactus: *freely, with the aid of*; lit. what? — passīs: see the Vocab. under pandō.

13. duo diēs: *for the space of two days*.

15. praetereuntem: from praetereō.

16. rēctā: rēctus, -a, -um, *straight, or direct*. The robbers were able to gain upon the trader because of the bends in the river.

ad ripam appulsā, ē silvā subitō ērūpērunt, ac nautās captōs ad castra sua nāvem reducere coegērunt.

Ibi negōtiātōris coquus Āfer cōnsiliō callidō ūsus est; nam simulābat dominum sibi iniūriās intulisse, sēque gau-
 5 dēre eum captum esse: quō modō in amicitiam pīrātārum inrēpsit, quī crēdēbant hominem socium fidēlem esse futūrum. Sed ōlim, cēnā omnibus in nāve appositā, coquus repente proximum pīrātam in flūmen prōiēcit; quō signō nautae cēterōs quoque in aquam dētrūsērunt. Pīrātae ad
 10 rīpam nandō pervēnērunt; negōtiātor autem nāvem cōnfestim solvit ac summā celeritāte domum profectus est.

LESSON 99

The Capture of Stony Point

Ōlim Britannī castra satis magna occupāverant in ripā flūminis Hudsōnis, haud procul ā castellis complūribus, quae adhūc tenēbant Americānī victī. Quārē colōnī, ca-
 15 stella sua magnō esse in periculō ratī, castra statim sibi dēlenda esse exīstimābant. Quam ad rem cōficiendam dēlēctus est quīdam Antōnius, vir fortissimus, quī antea facinora saepe ausus erat audācissima.

Omnibus rēbus parātis, Americānī, per silvās clam pro-
 20 fectī, sōlis occāsū prope castra Britannica in latebrīs cōn-

1. captōs: translate as if cēpērunt et.

3. coquus (-ī, M.): cook. — ūsus est: put into execution.

6. inrēpsit: inrēpō, 3, -rēpsī, worm (one's) way.

7. omnibus: i.e. for the whole party.

8. quō signō: cf. p. 57, l. 16.

10. nandō: cf. p. 12, l. 17.

15. magnō: modifier of periculō.

16. dēlenda esse: for the translation, cf. the note on reprimendam, p. 118, l. 6.

18. ausus erat: freely, had performed.

20. sōlis: sōl, sōlis, M., sun. — occāsū: abl. of time when (occāsus, -ūs, M., lit. setting).

sēdērunt, ibique hōrās complūris morātī sunt; tum tertiā ferē vigiliā silentiō ad castra accessērunt, cum interim duce ūterentur servō Āfrō, quī Pompēius appellābātur.

Ūnā cum servō praegrediēbantur duo militēs, quī vestī-
 5 mēta agricolārum gerēbant. Quārē custōdēs nihil suspi-
 cantēs hominēs propius accēdere passī sunt; Pompēius enim
 erat omnibus nōtus, quod anteā ad castra saepe vēnerat ut
 vēnderet bācās: quīn etiam sīgnum eī ā Britannīs interdum
 datum erat. Ita factum est ut sine strepitū custōdēs ā
 10 militibus duōbus caperentur; et legiōnēs ipsae paene in
 castra vēnērunt, priusquam Britannī sēnsērunt hostēs
 adesse. Tum autem celeriter concurrērunt ad arma et for-
 tissimē dimicāvērunt.

In proeliō Antōnius graviter vulnerātus est; castra
 15 autem sunt expugnāta ab Americānīs, quī brevī dēiēcērunt
 opera omnia, quae Britannī magnā diligentīā ibi effēcerant.

LESSON 100

Nathan Hale

Postquam Britannī Longā insulā tōtā potītī sunt, Va-
 singtō tamen Novī Eborāci aliquamdiū morātus est, cum
 discēdere nōllet, dōnec dē cōnsiliīs hostium certior factus

2. cum . . . ūterentur: trans-
 late by a partic. phrase. — duce:
 (as) *guide*.

3. quī . . . appellābātur:
named.

4. praegrediēbantur: praegre-
 dior, 3, -gressus sum, *go on
 ahead*.

5. nihil suspicantēs: *i.e. with-
 out suspicion*.

6. propius: cf. the force of the
 word on p. 115, l. 12.

7. omnibus: as (masc.) noun
 dat. case.

8. sīgnum: *countersign*.

9. datum erat: *had been com-
 municated*. — factum est ut: cf.
 p. 74, l. 15. — sine strepitū: *with-
 out (making any) disturbance*.

12. concurrērunt: sc. Britannī.

18. Novī Eborāci: locative
 case; cf. *domī* and *humī*.

19. factus esset: cf. *expectās-
 sent*, p. 104, l. 18.

esset. Diū ille hominem frūstrā quaerēbat, quī veste mūtātā castra Britannica speculandī causā adire vellet; postremō autem ad hanc rem suscipiendam lēgātus adulēscēns repertus est: quī, vestimentīs magistrī puerōrum sūmptis, 5 liburnicā vectus ad insulam incolumis pervēnit. Ubi Britannī, quī nihil suspicābantur, hominem liberē circum castra omnia ambulāre passī sunt. Ille autem diligenter faciēbat dēscriptiōnēs; commentāriōs vērō, nē sibi essent dētrimentō, sī in manūs hostium vēnisset, Latīnē scripsit. 10 Tum paucis post diēbus, rē bene cōfectā, ad locum rediit, unde ad continentem trāsitūrus erat.

Dum autem ibi liburnicam exspectat, in dēversōriō ā perfugā quōdam cōspectus est, quī Britannōs sine morā dē eius latebrīs certiōrēs fēcit. Itaque ab hostibus cōnfē- 15 stim missa est nāvis longa, quae hominem interciperet. Scaphā ē nāvi ad lītus appulsā, lēgātus scilicet amīcōs adesse crēdēbat; quārē ē latebrīs palam prōgressus, in lītore facile captus est. Is paulō post ā Britannīs capitis damnātus, fortissimē sē gerēbat; cumque tempus moriendī iam 20 adesset, aequissimō animō “Hoc solum mē paenitet,” inquit, “quod mihi est ūna vīta tantum, quam prō patriā largiar.”

1. ille: omit in translating. — quī . . . vellet: *willing*. — veste mūtātā: *i.e. in disguise*.

2. speculandī causā: *i.e. as a spy*; lit. what?

4. magistrī puerōrum: *a tutor*.

6. liberē: adv., *freely*, or *at will*.

8. dēscriptiōnēs: dēscriptiō, -ōnis, F., (*a drawing* (cf. scribō). — commentāriōs: commentārii, -ōrum, M., *notes*.

9. dētrimentō: dat. of service (cf. praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4); translate freely. — vēnisset: cf. factus esset,

p. 121, l. 19. — Latīnē: adv., *in Latin*.

11. trāsitūrus erat: *was to cross*.

18. is: omit in translating. — capitis damnātus: cf. the note on p. 47, l. 16.

19. moriendī: *freely, of execution*.

20. aequissimō: *fully composed*. — mē paenitet: *causes me regret* (paenitet, 2, paenituit).

21. quod: *that*. — largiar: subjunctive. For the phrasing of the whole clause, cf. p. 39, l. 17.

STORIES FROM CAESAR RETOLD

THE WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

LESSON 101

In 58 B.C. Julius Caesar became governor of northern Italy and the vast country extending from the Alps to the North Sea, and spent the next nine years in disciplining various tribes of that great territory.

Unexpected Trouble

Caesar, cum in Galliā bellum gerēbat, tōtam aestātem hostēs premere solitus est, tum, ut vīrēs militum cōservāret, exercitum in hiberna dēdūcēbat: nam caelum eārum regiōnum hieme asperrimum est; quārē ille iūdicābat
5 aestāte sibi cum hostibus esse dīmīcandum, reliquōs autem annī mēnsēs in hibernis militēs retinendōs esse. Ōlim, cum trānsisset in Britanniam multōsque diēs cum incolīs eius īnsulae bellum gessisset, aestāte exāctā ad continentem rediit. Ibi certior factus est propter siccitātem in Galliā
10 summam esse frūmenti inopiam. Itaque exercitum in partēs complūrēs dīvisum in dīversis cīvitatibus hiemandi causā collocāvit.

1. cum: *at the time when.* — aestātem: not aetātem. The acc. may be rendered "throughout."

2. vīrēs: do not confuse vīs and vir.

3. dēdūcēbat: note the tense. —caelum: *climate.*

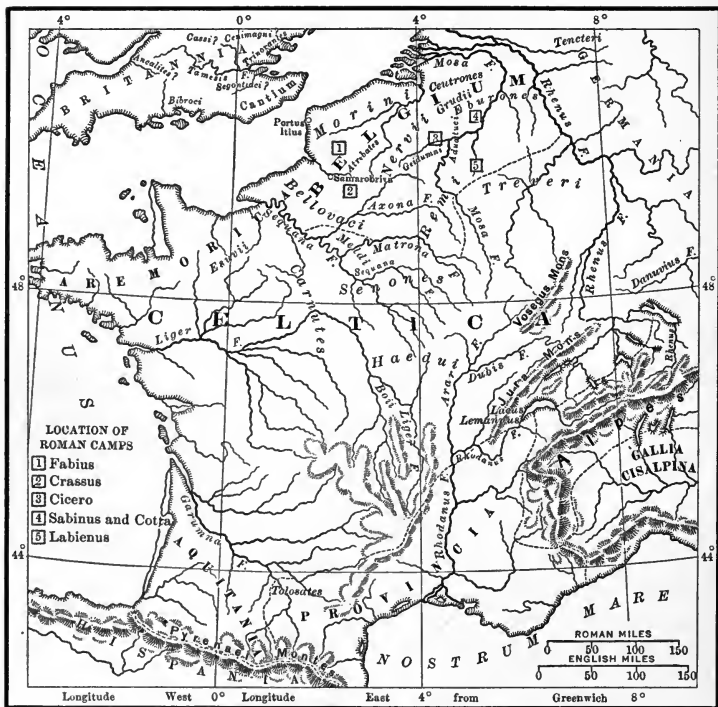
4. asperrimum: *i.e.* as compared with that of Italy. — ille: omit in translating.

6. ōlim: freely, *one year.*

8. aestāte exāctā: freely, *at the very end of the season*; cf. vigiliā . . . exāctā, p. 102, l. 8.

9. siccitātem: siccitās, -ātis, F., *drought.*

11. dīvisum: freely, *after dividing*, etc.; lit. what? — in . . . collocāvit: *quartered upon.* — dīversis cīvitatibus: the tribes of



GALLIA

Quō factō, dux quīdam Gallōrum, nōmine Ambiorīx, cum exercitus tot in partēs dīvisus esset, Rōmānōs iam dēmum facile superārī posse ratus, ūna castra longinqua subitō est adortus; impetus autem fortiter exceptus est ā nostrīs, 5 quī equitēs hostium cōnfēstim in fugam dedērunt. Quā spē dēiectī, Galli clāmāvērunt sē colloquium velle; quō auditō, lēgātī quī illis castrīs praeerant, extrā mūnitiōnēs nōn dubitāvērunt eōs mittere, quī cum Ambiorīge colloquerentur.

LESSON 102

A Parley with the Enemy

Ad colloquium missus est C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, 10 et Q. Iūnius, Hispāniēnsis, quī iam ante ā Caesare ipsō saepe dēlēctus erat, ut cum Ambiorīge ageret.

Eīs, cum extrā mūnitiōnēs ēgressi essent, rēx cōfirmāvit Gallōs ūniversōs cōstituīsse eō ipsō diē omnia hiberna Caesaris simul oppugnāre, nē qua legiō alterī legiōni

Gaul were numerous, and more or less independent of one another. In dividing his force for the winter, it was Caesar's idea, in view of the scanty crops, to distribute more widely than usual among the Gallic tribes the burden of supplying the grain needed by his soldiers.

1. cum: causal.

3. longinqua: this particular camp (No. 4 on the map) was distant about two hundred miles from Caesar's headquarters at Samarobriua.

4. nostrīs: the story being told from the point of view of the Romans.

5. quā spē: the same construction as with dēsistō (e.g. p. 119, l. 3); translate freely.

7. castrīs: for syntax, cf. p. 58, l. 12.

8. eōs: men.

9. C.: i.e. Cāius (Gaius).—eques Rōmānus: a Roman knight, i.e. a member of the middle order in the Roman state.

10. Q.: i.e. Quintus.

12. rēx: i.e. Ambiorīx.

13. ūniversōs: freely, generally; lit. what?

14. nē qua: so that no; cf. the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1.—legiō: legion (a body of about

subsidiō venire posset ; sē tamen invitum castra oppugnāsse, sed voluntāti cēterōrum Gallōrum civitātem suam resistere nōn potuisse. “Nec tamen,” inquit, “Caesaris in mē beneficiōrum immemor sum ; itaque vōs magnopere hortor, ut quam celerrimē exercitum vestrum ad proxima hiberna dēducātis. Magna enim manus Germānōrum Rhēnum nūper trānsiit, quōrum multitudinī nullō modō resistere poteritis. Quārē salutī vestrae statim cōsulite.” Simul pollicitus est sē Rōmānōs per finis suōs incolumēs iter facere passūrum.

Quā orātiōne habitā, discessit Ambiorix ; nūntiū autem rediērunt in castra lēgātōsque dē rēgis verbis certiōrēs fēcērunt.

LESSON 103

Division of Opinion in the Roman Camp

Q. Sabinus et L. Cotta lēgātī, rē repentinā permōtī, ea verba, etsī ab hoste dicta erant, tamen nōn negligenda esse existimābant ; itaque, cōnsiliō convocātō, quid optimum factū esset diū disputātum est.

Tribūnī centuriōnēsque complūrēs nihil sibi temerē agen-

4000 infantry, supplemented usually by a small detachment of cavalry, mostly foreign). In the camp attacked, the force amounted to a legion and a half ; the other camps were manned by a legion apiece.

1. subsidiō : dat. of service.
2. voluntāti : voluntās, -ātis, F., *wish* ; for syntax, see the Vocab. under resistō.
3. in mē (acc.) : *to me*.
4. immemor (-oris, adj.) : *unmindful*.

5. vestrum : vester, -tra, -trum, *your*.

7. trānsiit : *has crossed*.

12. lēgātōs : *the commanders*.

14. L. : *i.e. Lūcius*. — lēgātī : cf. l. 12.

15. negligenda : negligō, 3, negligēxī, negligētus, *disregard*, or *ignore*.

16. cōnsiliō : *council of war*.

17. factū : supine, *to do*. — esset : subj. in indirect question.

18. tribūnī (sc. militum) :

dum, neque ex hibernis iniussū Caesaris discēdendum iūdicābant; cum enim castra mūnitissima essent, crēdēbant sē Germānis facile resistere posse, dōnec Caesar cum legiōnibus subsidiō veniret. Sabīnus autem, veritus nē Gallī cum
 5 Germānis sē coniungerent, statim discēdendum cēnsuit; sciēbat enim Germānis magnō dolōri fuisse victōriās superiōrēs Rōmānōrum, neque arbitrābātur Gallōs, quī tot contumēliās ā Rōmānis accēperant, sē cum hoste quōvis coniungere dubitātūrōs.

10 Ōrātiōne in utramque partem habitā, cum Cotta sententiae collēgae suī ācritter resisteret, Sabīnus postrēmō irātus “Fiat,” inquit, “ut vōbīs vidētur; ego nōn is sum, quī mortis periculō magnopere terrear.”

LESSON 104

The Advice of the Enemy is Taken

Quibus verbis commōti, omnēs statim ē cōnsiliō surrēxērunt,
 15 lēgātōsque vehementer hortāti sunt nē suā pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēdūcerent: neque enim ūllum

(military) tribunes. Of these there were six for each legion; in rank they stood next to the legion commander. — centuriōnēs: centurions (subordinate officers, ranking from captain down).

3. legiōnibus: troops.

6. dolōri: dat. of service. — superiōrēs: as on p. 79, l. 7.

8. ā: at the hands of. — sē: obj. of coniungere, l. 9. — hoste: sc. Rōmānōrum. — quōvis: from quivīs.

10. in utramque partem: freely, pro and con. — cum . . . resisteret: translate by a partic. phrase. —

sententiae: for syntax, cf. Germānis, l. 3.

11. collēgae: collēga, -ae, M., lit. colleague; here, brother officer (namely, Sabīnus).

12. fiat: let it be. — ut . . . vidētur: as (it) seems best. — is . . . quī: cf. eōs . . . quī, p. 125, l. 8.

16. rem: matters. — neque: in combination with enim and other postpositive words, neque usually replaces nōn. In the translation of this particular clause, combine the negative with ūllum (= nūllum).

hostem sibi timendum esse, sī modo omnēs idem probārent; in dissēnsiōne autem nūllam esse spem.

Cum iam ad mediam noctem disputātum esset, tum dē-
mum Sabīnī sententia superāvit, ac māne castra mōtum
5 īrī militibus prōnūntiātum est. Cōnsūmpta est vigiliīs re-
liqua pars noctis, cum militēs bona colligerent sua, nec
satis scirent quid in hibernīs relinquendum, aut quid sēcum
portandum esset. Deinde primā lūce ē castrīs longissimō
agmine maximisque impedimentis profectī sunt; plērique
10 enim nōn suspicābantur Ambiorigem omnia ea, quae dē
Germānōrum adventū dixerat, mentitum esse, cum spērāret
ita sē Rōmānōs ex hibernīs ēlicere posse.

At interim hōstēs, quī ex nocturnō strepitū intellēxerant
lēgātōs cōstituisse cōnfēstim castra movēre, in silvās
15 paulum sē recēperant insidiisque locō idōneō collocātis
adventum Rōmānōrum cupidē exspectābant.

LESSON 105

The Romans are Ambushed

Ita factum est ut, cum maior pars agminis Rōmānōrum
in magnam vallem dēscendisset, Gallī subitō ē latebris

1. **timendum esse**: *need be feared*, a common force of the gerundive, esp. in negative phrases. The indirect discourse at this point is due to the idea of saying (*dixerunt*) implied in *hortāti sunt*, p. 127, l. 15. — **modo**: consult the Vocab. under *sī*. — **idem probārent**: *i.e. should agree upon one plan*; lit. what?

2. **dissēnsiōne**: *dissēnsiō, -ōnis*, F., *disagreement*.

4. **mōtum īrī**: what part of the verb?

5. **vigiliīs**: we would say "*in wakefulness*." What is another meaning of this word?

6. **colligerent**: *colligō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus, get together*. Translate this clause by a partic. phrase.

7. **relinquendum**: sc. *esset*; for mood, cf. *esset*, p. 126, l. 17. — **aut**: we would say "and."

8. **longissimō**: and, therefore, *stragglīng*.

11. **cum spērāret**: cf. the cum-clause in l. 6.

ērumperent, atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium com-
mitterētur. Sabīnus, quī adhūc nihil suspicātus erat,
ācerimō hostium impetū vehementer commōtus, in omnīs
partēs properāvit ac cohortēs dispōnere cōnātus est: Cotta
5 vērō, quī cōgitāverat haec posse in itinere accidere, ob
eamque causam cēnsuerat ex hibernīs nōn discēdendum
esse, virum magnum interim sē praebēbat; omnibus enim
modīs commūnī cōsulēbat salutī, ac fortissimē officia et
imperātōris et militis simul praestābat.

10 Tum, quod propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile
prōvidēri poterat quid quōque locō faciendum esset, lēgātī
suīs imperāvērunt ut, impedimentis relictīs, in orbem cōn-
sisterent. Quod cōnsilium (etsī eōdem imperātōrēs summī
in eius modī cāsū ūtī solent) tum haud fēliciter accidit; nam
15 hōstēs, nōn sine maximō timōre impedimenta ā Rōmānīs
relicta esse ratī, etiam ācrius iam dīmīcāvērunt.

1. nostrīs: dat. case; con-
strue with inīquissimō.—commit-
terētur: note the termination,
which indicates the case of proe-
lium.

3. ācerimō: translate the su-
perlative "exceedingly."

4. cohortēs: ten cohorts con-
stituted a legion (p. 125, l. 14,
note).

5. haec: neut. — ob eamque
causam: the prep. ob does not
combine with -que, which is, there-
fore, passed on to the following
word.

7. virum magnum: pred. acc.
— praebēbat: praebeō, 2, -uī, -itus,
show.

8. commūnī . . . salutī: for
syntax, cf. p. 126, l. 8.—et . . .
et: correlative.

9. militis: a soldier (in the
ranks).

10. longitūdinem: longitūdō,
-inis, F., extent (cf. longus).

11. prōvidēri: note the last let-
ter of the word.—quōque: from
quisque.—faciendum: cf. the note
on p. 128, l. 1.

12. in orbem: i.e. so as to form
a circle.

13. eōdem: referring to cōnsi-
lium.

14. modī: sort.

16. etiam ācrius: (all the) more
fiercely.

LESSON 106

The Enemy Prevail

Accēdēbat ut militēs multī ab sīgnīs discēderent et bona sua cārīssima ab impedimentīs arripere cōnārentur : cēteri autem, quamquam ā Fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors 5 prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā, Ambiorīx suōs procul tēla conicere iussit nec propius accēdere. Quam ob rem, cum iam aliqua cohors excesserat ex orbe atque impetum fēcerat, summā celeritāte fugiēbant hostēs; cum autem cohors rursus ad 10 aciem sē recipere coeperat, tum Gallī, undique coortī, nostrōs ācerrimē premēbant.

Cum sic ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnātum esset, T. Balventius, vir fortis et magnae auctōritātis, trāgulā graviter vulnerātus est; Q. Lūcānius, fortissimē pugnāns, 15 dum circumventō filiō subsidiō venit, est interfectus; ac L. Cotta lēgātus, cum militēs hortārētur, fundā percussus est. Quibus rēbus permōtus Sabīnus, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōspēxisset, interpretem suum

1. accēdēbat: impersonal use, *it was added (that)*; freely, *matters were made worse by the fact (that)*. — ab sīgnīs: *i.e.* from their places in the line. Each cohort had its own special standards.

4. quotiēns . . . prōcurrerat: cf. p. 72, l. 1, with the note on the pluperfect.

5. ab: cf. the use of this prep. in the phrase ā tergō. — cadēbat: note the tense.

7. propius: absol. compar.

8. excesserat: excēdō, 3, -cessī,

-cessum est, *move out*. — orbe: cf. p. 129, l. 12.

10. aciem: *i.e.* orbem. — coortī: freely, *closing in*.

12. hōram octāvam: cf. the note on p. 74, l. 16.

13. T.: *i.e.* Tītus.

15. circumventō: translate by a relative clause.

16. fundā: funda, -ae, F., *slings*; see the illustration on p. 140.

18. suōs: reflexive to Ambiorīgem. — interpretem: interpres, -etis, C., *interpreter*.

Cn. Pompēium ad eum misit rogātum, ut sibi militibusque parceret.

LESSON 107

Annihilation of the Roman Force

Rēx respondit nihil Rōmānis timendum esse, sēque Sabīnī ipsiūs salūtem praestāre, sī ille ad colloquium venīre vellet.
 5 Quō audītō, Cotta tamen negāvit ad armātum hostem sē itūrum, atque in eō persevērāvit. Sabīnus autem tribūnōs militum centuriōnēsque quī adstābant sē sequī iussit; cumque propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iussus arma abicere, pārūit, ac suīs ut idem facerent imperāvit. Dum
 10 autem ibi dē condiōnibus inter sē agunt, Sabīnus paulātim circumventus ā Gallīs occīsus est.

Tum vērō hostēs sustulērunt ululātum, impetūque in nostrōs factō ordinēs perturbāverunt. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns periit cum maximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in
 15 hiberna recēpērunt, unde erant nūper ēgressī. E quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, homō magnārum vīrium, cum cōnfertissimā multitudīne hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōiēcit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pugnāns interfectus est.

20 Rōmānī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinuerunt;

1. Cn.: *i.e.* Cnaeus (*Gnaeus*).—
 rogātum: cf. petītum, p. 95, l. 13.

4. vellet: cf. the note on ad-
 moveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

6. eō: (neut.) noun.

8. propius: with the force of
 a prep., *quite near to*.

9. idem: note the gender.

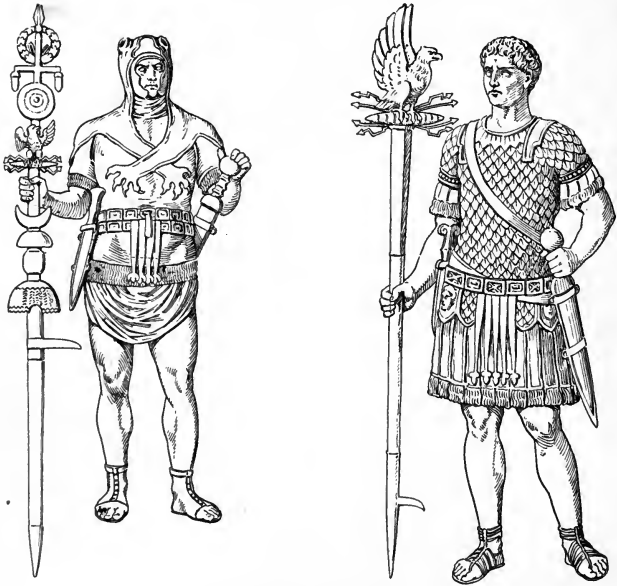
14. cum: *i.e.* unā cum.

16. aquilifer (-erī, M.): *stand-*

ard bearer, lit. *eagle bearer*.—
 Aside from the standards of the
 cohorts, each legion carried a sil-
 ver eagle.—vīrium: from what
 nom. sing.? Give some of the
 meanings of the singular.

17. aquilam: aquila, -ae, F.,
eagle.

18. ipse: autem may be sup-
 plied.



STANDARD BEARERS

The standards carried in the Roman army were numerous and rather diverse (see also the illustration on page 162). As the eagle was the chief standard of the legion, upon it was lavished all the enthusiastic devotion which modern soldiers feel for their flag. No disgrace was so deep and terrible as to have the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy.

tum, dēspērātā salūte, ad ūnum omnēs sē ipsī interfēcērunt. Pauci, quī paulō ante ē proeliō effūgerant, per silvās incertīs itineribus ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna pervēnērunt, atque eum dē rēbus gestīs fēcērunt certiōrem.

LESSON 108

The Gauls attack a Second Camp

5 Hāc victōriā sublātus, Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduātucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō finitimī, profectus est; neque noctem neque diem intermīsīt, peditātumque sē iussit subsequī.

Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduātucīsque concitātīs, posterō diē in
10 Nerviōs pervēnit, eōsque hortātus est, nē suī in perpetuum liberandī occāsiōnem dīmitterent. Interfectōs esse lēgātōs duo Rōmānōs magnamque partem exercitūs interīsse docuit; facillimēque opprimī posse eam quoque legiōnem, quae cum Q. Cicerōne in finibus eōrum hiemāret. Quā orātiōne
15 facile Nervii persuāsīt.

1. dēspērātā: dēspērō, 1, *despair of*. — sē ipsī: cf. ipse . . . sē, p. 8, l. 2. The men probably ran upon one another's swords.

3. ad T. Labiēnum: in connection with in hiberna, this phrase may conveniently be rendered by a genitive. For the location of Labienus' camp, see the map on p. 124.

4. gestīs: lit. *done*; translate freely, using a relative clause.

5. sublātus: from tollō. — in: *into the territory of*.

6. Aduātucōs: for this and other peoples mentioned, see again the map on p. 124.

7. intermīsīt: sc. cursum, *i.e.*

drew rein. — sē: omit in translation.

9. concitātīs: concitō, 1, *stir up*.

10. suī: gen. pl.

11. liberandī: gerundive, taking its form from suī. Render the gen. (freely) "to."

13. facillimēque: as governing verb for this clause, dixit may be supplied.

14. Q. Cicerōne: another of Caesar's lieutenants (see the map). — eōrum: *i.e.* Nerviorum. — hiemāret: for mood, cf. admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

15. Nervii persuāsīt: *won over the Nervii*; lit. what?

Itaque cōnfēstim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, nātiōnēsq̄ aliās, ut quam maximīs cōpiīs auxiliō statim venīrent, repente ad Cicerōnis hiberna hostēs sē ostendērunt; ubi nōnnūlli militēs, morte Sabīnī Cottaēque nōndum 5 nūntiātā, sine timōre extrā mūnitiōnēs officiīs variīs operam dabant. Ex hīs quīdam, quī lignātiōnis causā in silvās discesserant, repentinō equitum adventū interceptī sunt. Cēterī autem celeriter concurrērunt ad arma, vāllumque cōnscendērunt.

LESSON 109

The Besieged attempt to Communicate with Caesar

- 10 Missae sunt ad Caesarem cōnfēstim ā Cicerōne litterae; obsessīs autem omnibus viīs, ab hostibus missī interceptī sunt. Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant, nostrī turrēs circiter CXX incredibili celeritāte exstrūxērunt.
- 15 Posterō diē hostēs, multō maiōribus coactīs cōpiīs, castra iterum oppugnāvērunt, fossamque complēre cōnātī sunt. Eādē ratiōne, quā prīdiē, nostrī restitērunt. Hoc idem reliquīs deinceps diēbus factum est. Nulla pars noctis labōribus militum carēbat: nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs

2. aliās: not reliquās or cēterās. — ut: the construction is determined by the idea of urging or commanding implied in the sending of messengers. — maximīs cōpiīs: abl. case; translate "with."

3. ad: in the neighborhood of.

6. lignātiōnis causā: cf. p. 108, l. 8.

7. equitum: i.e. of the enemy.

9. cōnscendērunt: manned.

11. missī: part., as (masc.) noun.

12. noctū: during the (following) night. — māteriā: māteria, -ae, F., timber.

17. quā: freely, as; strictly, abl., in the same construction as eādē ratiōne.

18. reliquīs: the following. — deinceps: adv., in turn.

19. labōribus militum: freely, toil for the soldiers. — carēbat: was without, or lacked; cf. the note on mē . . . carēre, p. 68, l. 13.

facultās quiētis dabātur: nec Cicerō ipse, etsī tenuissimā erat valētūdine, nocturnō tempore ad quiētem ūtēbātur, priusquam mīlitum vōcibus sibi parcere coāctus est.

Tum ducēs Nerviōrum, quī aliquam causam amīcitiæ cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle nūntiāvērunt. Factā potestāte, eadem commemorant, quæ paulō ante Ambiorix cum Sabīnō ēgerat. Addunt etiam dē Sabīni morte, et cōfirmant sē nihil recūsāre nisi hiberna, atque hanc inveterāscere cōsuētūdinem nōlle; quam ob rem 10 Rōmānīs licēre incolumibus ex castrīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine timōre proficisci.

LESSON 110

Heroic Defense of their Camp

At Cicerō, quī iniussū Caesaris castra movēre nōlēbat, Gallīs respondit nōn esse cōsuētūdinem populī Rōmāni ūllam accipere ab hoste armātō condiōnem; sī ab armīs 15 discēdere atque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere vellent, spērāre sē eōs, quæ petīssent, impetrātūrōs.

1. quiētis: quiēs, -ētis, F., rest. — tenuissimā: tenuis, -is, -e, slight; here, poor.

2. valētūdine: cf. p. 110, l. 9. The abl. phrase expresses quality or characteristic; cf. the similar use of the genitive.

4. causam: i.e. ground.

6. potestāte: i.e. facultāte. — commemorant: i.e. dīcunt. In animated narration, the pres. indic. is often thus used for the perfect.

7. cum Sabīnō ēgerat: had treated (in his dealings) with Sabīnus.

9. hanc . . . cōsuētūdinem: i.e. the practice of quartering a division of the army upon them for the winter. — inveterāscere: inveterāscō, 3, -veterāvī, become fixed.

10. incolumibus: pred. dat. — quāscumque: quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whatsoever.

14. ūllam: modifier of condiōnem.

15. lēgātōs: as on p. 48, l. 9.

16. quæ: i.e. ea quæ, lit. the things which; freely, the concessions which. — petīssent: i.e. petivissent; cf. also the note on expectāssent, p. 104, l. 18.

Hāc spē dēiectī Nervii vällō pedum decem et fossā pedum quīndecim hiberna circumdant. Eīs autem nūlla erat ferramentōrum cōpia, quae ad eam rem ūsuī sunt; gladiis igitur caespitēs circumcidere et manibus sagisque terram exhaurire cōgēbantur. Quā ex rē hominum multitudō cōgnōscī potest; nam hōrīs ferē tribus decem mīlium passuum in circuitū mūnitiōnem pedum quīndecim perfēcērunt.

Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coortō ventō, hostēs tēla fervefacta in casās iēcērunt; quae celeriter comprehendērunt ignem, et ventī magnitudīne in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Tum Gallī, victōriam ratī iam dēmum esse partam, maximō clāmōre vällum scālīs ascendere coepērunt. At tanta erat virtūs nostrōrum, ut, cum maximā tēlōrum multitudīne premerentur, suaque impedimenta omnia ignī cōsumī intellegerent, dē vällō dēcēderet nēmō. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen

1. hāc spē dēiectī: cf. the similar phrase, p. 125, l. 5.

2. circumdant: for tense, cf. p. 135, l. 6. — eīs: *i.e.* Nerviiis.

3. ferramentōrum: ferramentum, -ī, N., *iron implement*. — eam: *such*. — rem: *business*. — ūsuī sunt: *are needed*.

4. circumcidere: circumcidō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus, *cut out*, lit. *cut around*.

5. exhaurire: exhauriō, 4, -hausī, -haustus, *remove*, lit. *haul out*.

7. pedum quīndecim: freely, *fifteen-foot* (including both vällum and fossa, as thus far completed).

10. fervefacta: fervefactus, -a, -um, *red-hot*. — casās: *barracks*. — quae: feminine.

11. ventī: gen. case. — magnitudīne: abl. of cause (*magnitudō*, -inis, F., *force*, lit. *greatness*; cf. *magnus*); translate "by reason of."

12. distulērunt: sc. eum (*i.e.* ignem).

13. vällum: *i.e.* castrōrum; not the vällum of l. 1. — scālīs: scālae, -ārum, F., *ladder(s)*.

14. cum: concessive.

15. maximā . . . multitudīne: freely, *a perfect storm*.

16. dē vällō: *i.e.* from (*his position upon*) the rampart. — dēcēderet: dēcēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, *withdraw*.

17. nostrīs: dat. case; translate "for."

hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium interiret aut vulnerārētur.

LESSON III

A Messenger eludes the Enemy

Quantō erat in diēs gravior oppugnātiō, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiique ad Caesarem mittēbantur; ē quibus nōn-nūlli, in cōspectū nostrōrum militum intercepti, cum cruciātū necātī sunt. Intrā hiberna autem erat Nervius quidam, nōmine Verticō, quī ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat, cum primum castra oppugnāta sunt. Hic servō spē libertātis magnisque persuāsit praemiis, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferret. Ille celeriter profectus, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspiciōne versātus, ad Caesarem incolumis pervēnit. Ab eō dē periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnitum est.

Caesar, acceptis litterīs hōrā ferē ūndecimā diēi, nūntium cōnfēstim in Bellovacōs mittit ad M. Crassum, cuius hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum quīnque et vīginti; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, quī eī

1. ut: *that*. — eō diē: *i.e.* the day referred to on p. 136, l. 17 as hīc diēs.

3. quantō . . . tantō: with the comparatives, *the . . . the*, lit. *by how much . . . by so much*. — erat: *became*. — in diēs: cf. p. 44, l. 4. — crēbriōrēs: crēber, -bra, -brum, lit. *frequent*: transl. as adv.

8: servō: sc. suō (*i.e.* "of his"); dat. case, to be construed with persuāsit, l. 9.

10. ille: the slave. — Gallus: (*since he was*) a Gaul. — inter . . . versātus: freely, *mixing*

with; lit. what? — sine: *without* (*exciting*).

12. periculīs: translate as sing.

13. hōrā . . . ūndecimā diēi: cf. the note on p. 74, l. 16.

14. in: cf. the note on p. 133, l. 5. — mittit: cf. commemorant, p. 135, l. 6. — ad M. Crassum: see the map on p. 124.

15. eō: *i.e.* Caesare.

16. iubet: sc. eum (*i.e.* Crassum). — ad: *to* (*join*).

17. alterum: sc. nūntium. — ad C. Fabium: see the map again. — eī: *i.e.* Fabiō.

nūntiet, ut legiōnem in Atrebatēs addūcat, quōrum per finēs sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō ut, si rei pūblicae commodō fieri possit, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quae paulō aberat longius, nōn arbitrātur exspectandam; equitēs circiter CCCC ex proximis hibernīs cōgit.

LESSON 112

Caesar heads a Relief Force

Hōrā ferē tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū Caesar certior est factus. Eō diē milia passuum viginti prōgressus est. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeposuit, legiō-
 10 nemque eī trādīdit, quod ibi relinquēbat impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, litterās pūblicās, frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā comportāverat. Paulō post Fabius, ut imperātum erat, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. At Labiēnus, morte Sabinī et clāde
 15 cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, si ex hibernīs fugae similem pro-

1. legiōnem: sc. suam.—in Atrebatēs: *i.e.* F. was to march south to join Caesar, as the latter moved eastward.

2. ut: in this connection, scribit implies imperat also; hence the ut-clause.

3. rei pūblicae commodō: lit. *with the well-being of the commonwealth*; freely, *without endangering the public weal.*—possit: *it may.*—legiōne: sc. suā.

7. hōrā . . . tertiā: *i.e.* of the day following.—antecursōribus: antecursor, -ōris, M., *courier.*

9. praeposuit: with dat., *left in charge (of).*

11. civitātum: *i.e.* the Gallic states; translate the gen. "from."—litterās: *documents.*

12. eō: the adv.

13. imperātum erat: note the gender.

14. occurrit: sc. eī (*i.e.* Caesarī).

15. cohortium: freely, *to the cohorts.*—cum: causal.—ad . . . vēnissent: *had marched upon.*—Trēverōrum: see the map on p. 124.

16. fugae: dat. case; construe with similem.

fectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetus sustinēri nōn posset, litterās Caesarī remisit, quibus ostendit quantum esset perīculum docuitque omnēs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum ab suis castris cōnsēdisse.

5 Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsi opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās redierat, omnem tamen commūnis salutis spem in celeritāte pōnēbat. Venit igitur magnīs itineribus in Nerviorū finēs. Ibi ex captivīs cōgnōscit quae in Cicerōnis hibernis gerantur, quantōque in perīculō rēs sit.

LESSON 113

The Besieged learn of Caesar's Approach

10 Itaque cuidam ex equitibus Gallis Caesar magnīs praemiīs persuāsit, ut ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferret. Hanc Graecīs litterīs scrīptam mīsīt, nē Gallō interceptō nostra cōnsilia ab hostibus cōgnōscerentur. Homīnī imperāvit ut, si hiberna intrāre nōn posset, trāgulam cum epistulā ad
15 āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnitiōnēs abiceret. In epistulā scrīpsit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; Cicerōnem hortātus est ut prīstinam virtūtem retinēret.

1. fēcisset: cf. *expectāssent*, p. 104, l. 18.

2. quibus: cf. p. 38, l. 16. — *esset*: why subjunctive?

4. Trēverōrum: *belonging to the Treveri*. — suis: *his*.

5. opīniōne: opīniō, -ōnis, F., *expectation*; cf. the similar phrase, p. 125, l. 5 ff.

6. redierat: *i.e. had been reduced*.

7. venit: what tense? (note the 'ē). — magnīs itineribus: *i.e. forced marches*.

8. captivīs: *i.e. Gauls whom*

he had arrested as he marched. — *quae*: neut. interrogative; translate as sing. (*quid*).

10. *ex*: *of*. — Gallis: with adj. force. The cavalry of the Roman army was recruited largely from foreign nations (cf. the note on legiō, p. 125, l. 14).

11. epistulam: epistula, -ae, F., *letter*.

12. Gallō interceptō: translate by a conditional clause.

15. āmentum: āmentum, -ī, N., *strap*. — dēligātā: dēligō, I, *fasten*.

16. adfore: *i.e. adfutūrum esse*.



ARMA

The upper illustration is interesting as showing the very primitive equipment of some of the light-armed troops. In the lower picture may be seen on the spears of the warrior the strap (*amentum*) which was used to assist the hand when the weapons were hurled.

Gallus, cum ad hiberna vēnisset, periculum veritus, ut erat imperātum, trāgulam cum litteris mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostris statim animadversa, tertiō diē ā milite quōdam cōspicitur; quī eam sine morā ad Cicerōnem dēfert. Ille, epistolā perlēctā, militēs laetus docet Caesarem iam subsidiō venīre. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul cernēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

LESSON 114

The Enemy raise the Siege

Gallī rē cōgnitā per explorātōrēs, obsidiōne statim relictā, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt. Quō animadversō, Cicerō Gallum quendam celeriter cum litteris mittit, in quibus scribit hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque multitudinem ad Caesarem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediā nocte adlātis, Caesar suōs facit certiōrēs, eōsque ad pugnandum animō cōfirmat.

Posterō diē, cum luce primā mōvisset castra et circiter milia passuum quattuor prōgressus esset, trāns vallem ma-

1. periculum: *i.e.* of trying to enter the camp.

2. litteris: *i.e.* epistolā. — cāsū: *i.e.* forte.

3. ad . . . adhaesit: freely, caught upon.

6. tum: later. — fūmī: translate as singular.

7. cernēbantur: cf. the rendering of vidēbant, p. 36, l. 7. — quae rēs: cf. quae urbs, p. 44, l.

13. — omnem: any. — dubitātiōnem: dubitātiō, -ōnis, F., doubt.

9. rē: the situation. — per: freely, from; lit. through.

10. ad: against. — omnibus cōpiis: cum may be supplied with this abl.

12. omnem . . . multitudinem: sc. suam. The whole is obj. of convertisse.

14. pugnandum: gerund.

15. animō: lit. in mind. — cōfirmat: fortifies. Render freely.

16. mōvisset: subject, Caesar.

17. magnam: modifying both

gnam et rīvum hostium multitudinem vīdit. Erat magnī periculī rēs cum tantīs cōpiīs iniquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum esse Cicerōnem sciēbat, dē celeritāte aliquid sibi remittendum existimābat: quārē cōn-
5 sēdit, et, quam aequissimō locō poterat, castra mūnivit.

LESSON 115

They are Outgeneraled by Caesar

Postrīdie hostium equitātus primā lūce ad castra accessit, proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus commisit. Caesar autem suis imperāvit ut cēderent cōsultō sēque in castra recipere; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō
10 mūnīrī, portās obstruī, omniaque cum simulātiōne timōris agī iussit.

Quibus rēbus invitātī, hostēs cōpiās rīvum trādūxērunt omnīs, aciemque iniquō locō cōstituērunt; tum Caesar, omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō, eōs

vallem and rīvum, and agreeing with the nearer.

2. rēs: *a matter*. — cōpiīs: sc. Gallōrum. — tum: *furthermore*.

3. obsidiōne: translate the abl. "from."

4. aliquid sibi remittendum: freely, *he should relax somewhat*; lit. what?

5. quam aequissimō locō poterat: *in as favorable a position as he could*. This fuller form helps to show how *quam* and the superl. came to mean "as . . . as possible." — mūnivit: cf. the part. mūnītus.

6. castra: sc. Caesaris.

8. cōsultō: adv.

9. altiōre vāllō: not a new rampart, but the old built higher.

10. obstruī: obstruō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctus, *block up*. — simulātiōne timōris: the purpose of this maneuver is made clear by the following sentence.

12. invitātī: invitātus, -a, -um, part., *invited*; freely, *made bold*. — rīvum trādūxērunt: *i.e.* dūxērunt trāns rīvum; cf. flūmen trāductīs, p. 91, l. 10.

13. omnīs: modifier of cōpiās.

14. omnibus portīs: for syntax, cf. fenestrā, p. 76, l. 3.

celeriter in fugam dedit. Longius autem insequi veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdebant, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Turrēs mūnitiōnēsque hostium admirātur. Legiōne prōductā, cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; quā ex rē iūdicat quantō in periculō rēs fuerit. Cicerōne militibusque laudātis, centuriōnēs tribūnōsque singulōs appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimoniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabini et Cottae certius ex captivīs cōgnōscit.

LESSON 116

Arrangements for the Rest of the Winter

Dum haec fiunt, ad Labiēnum incrēdibili celeritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma dēfertur; quīn etiam, cum ab hibernis Cicerōnis milia passuum Labiēnus abesset circiter sexāgintā, atque ad Cicerōnem post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediā noctem subitō ad portās Labiēni castrōrum auditus est eōrum clāmōr, quī lēgātō grātulārī

1. longius: absol. compar.

2. intercēdebant: intercēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, *intervene*. — omnibus suis incolumibus: abl. absol.; translate "with."

4. hostium: freely, *built by the enemy*.

5. nōn decimum, etc.: order of lit. translation: nōn quemque decimum militem esse reliquum.

7. fuerit: perf. subjunctive; why this mood? Note carefully the force of the tense.

8. ēgregiam: pred. adj. (ēgregius, -a, -um, *conspicuous*).

9. testimoniō: testimoniū, -ī, N., *report*. The abl. expresses means; we would say "from."

10. certius: as noun (neut. sing.); see the Vocab. under cōgnōscō.

11. haec: *this*. — Labiēnum: cf. p. 138, l. 14 ff.

12. fāma (-ae, F.): *report*. — dēfertur: *i.e.* by natives. — cum: concessive.

15. ad: *before*.

16. eōrum: *of those*. — clāmōr: translate as pl. — grātulārī: grātulor, 1, *offer congratulation*.

volēbant, quod hostīs Caesar superāvisset. At Trēverī, qui posterō diē hiberna Labiēnī oppugnāre cōstituerant, repentinā rē perterriti noctū domum celeriter sē recēpērunt.

Postridiē Caesar cōntiōne habitā militēs cōfirmāvit, eōsque docuit dētrimentum, quod temeritāte lēgātī esset acceptum, aequiōre animō esse ferendum, quod beneficiō deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum legiōnēs cēterae cōservātae essent neque hostibus diūtinum gaudium relinquerētur. Fabium cum legiōne remisit in hiberna; ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam hiemāre cōstituit: nam cum animī omnium Gallōrum ad bellum incitātī vidērentur, tōtam hiemem sibi apud exercitum manendum arbitrābātur.

4. cōntiōne habitā: *i.e.* in Cicero's camp.

5. temeritāte: translate the abl. "through."—lēgātī: *i.e.* Sabīnī. —esset acceptum: for mood, cf. *admoveantur*, p. 61, l. 14.

6. aequiōre animō esse ferendum: *i.e.* should be taken the more philosophically; lit. what?

7. immortalium: immortalis, -is, -e, *immortal*. In passages like the present, the use of this adj. is formal and conventional; properly, it contrasts the life of

the gods with the (earthly) life of men.—eōrum: *i.e.* the soldiers addressed.

8. diūtinum: diūtinus, -a, -um, *long-continued*.—gaudium (-ī, N.): *exultation* (cf. *gaudeō*).

9. Fabium, etc.: see again the map on p. 124.

11. cum: causal.

12. tōtam hiemem: usually this was not necessary, the winter months being normally a season of rest from active field service (see p. 123, l. 3 ff.).

AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

LESSON 117

During the civil war which broke out between Caesar and Pompey four or five years after the events above narrated, there was fighting in all parts of the civilized world, and more than once Africa was the battleground.

Caesar lands a Force in Africa

Interim C. Cūriō duās legiōnēs, D equitēs, ex Siciliā in Africam trānsportāvit. Ubi eius adventum L. Caesar cum decem longīs nāvibus exspectābat; quī autem, cum classis Cūriōnis in cōnspectum vēnisset, nāvium multitudinem
5 veritus, appulsā ad proximum litus trirēme, pedibus Hadrūmētum fūgit: quō nāvēs quoque eius reliquae, fugā ducis cōgnitā, statim sē recēpērunt.

Cūriō Mārcium Rūfum cum classe Uticam praemittit. Ipse eōdem cum exercitū proficiscitur; triduique iter prō
10 gressus, ad flūmen Bagradam pervēnit. Ibi C. Canīnium Rebilum lēgātum legiōnēsque relinquit; ipse cum equitātū antecēdit ad Castra Cornēlia explōranda, quī locus peridōneus castris exīstimābātūr.

1. C. Cūriō: one of Caesar's generals.—D.: the numeral: supply -que or et with this clause.

2. L. Caesar: an officer in Pompey's navy.

5. veritus: *appalled at*.—trirēme: sc. suā (trirēm̄is, -is, F., galley).—pedibus: we would say "on foot"; cf. manibus genibusque, p. 59, l. 8.—Hadrūmētum: consult the map on p. 146; for

syntax, see the note on p. 79, l. 21.

6. quō: the adv.—fugā: *defection*.

8. Uticam: the base of operations of Pompey's forces in Africa.

9. proficiscitur: from Anquilaria.

12. antecēdit: antecēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, *push ahead*, lit. *go on ahead*.—quī locus: cf. quae urbs, p. 44, l. 13.—peridō-



THE SCENE OF CURIO'S CAMPAIGN IN AFRICA.

Hāc explōrātā regiōne, Cūriō Uticae quoque mūnitiōnēs speculātus est; cumque animadvertisset plēnissimis viis undique portārī agīque multa, quae repentinī tumultūs timōre ex agris in urbem cōferēbantur, equitātum mīsīt, ut praedā inspērātā potirētur. Simul ex urbe ēmissi sunt DC equitēs Numidae, quī agricolīs fugientibus auxiliō essent. Concurrunt equitēs inter sē; neque vērō primum impetum nostrōrum Numidae ferre poterant, sed interfectis circiter CXX reliquī sē in urbem contulērunt.

LESSON 118

Operations about Utica

10 Interim Mārcius nāvēs longās Uticam dēdūxerat; cuius adventū cōgnitō, Cūriō prōnūntiārī iussit onerāriīs, quae in portū ad ancoram stābant numerō circiter CC, sē in hostium locō habitūrum omnēs, quī nōn statim ad Castra Cornēlia nāvis trādūxissent. Quā prōnūntiātiōne factā,
15 sine morā sublātis ancoris omnēs reliquērunt Uticam et, quō imperātum erat, trānsiērunt. Quae rēs omnium rērum cōpiā exercitum nostrum complēvit.

neus (-a, -um): *particularly suitable*; cf. the note on *perpaucōs*, p. 25, l. 10.

2. plēnissimis: plēnus, -a, -um, *congested*. — viis: translate the abl. "along"; cf. *sēmitā*, p. 103, l. 17.

3. portārī agīque: cf. the note on *rapere et agere*, p. 49, l. 8.

4. timōre: freely, *in the panic*; strictly, abl. of cause.

5. inspērātā: inspērātus, -a, -um, *unexpected*.

6. Numidae: with adj. force.

7. neque: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

10. Mārcius: see p. 145, l. 8.

11. prōnūntiārī: cf. p. 128, l. 5; note the final vowel.

12. numerō: for syntax, cf. *animō*, p. 37, l. 20. — in hostium locō habitūrum: *would regard as enemies*; lit. what?

13. omnēs: masc.

14. nāvis: *i.e.* the *onerariae* of l. 11. — trādūxissent: *i.e.* across the harbor (see the map). For mood and tense, cf. *esset perruptus*, p. 107, l. 3. — prōnūntiātiōne: prōnūntiātiō, -ōnis, F., *announcement*.

16. quō: the adv.

His rēbus gestis, Cūriō sē in castra ad Bagradam recipit, posterōque diē exercitum Uticam dūcit et prope oppidum castra pōnit. Nōndum opere castrōrum perfectō, equitēs ex statiōne nūntiant magna auxilia equitum peditumque ā 5 rēge Iubā missa Uticam venire; eōdemque tempore vīs magna pulveris cernēbātur, et temporis pūctō primum agmen erat in cōnspectū. Quā rē novā Cūriō permōtus equitēs suōs praemittit, quī primum impetum sustineant; ipse, celeriter ab opere dēductis legiōnibus, aciem instruit.

LESSON 119

Curio gains an Initial Advantage

- 10 Interim equitēs cum hostibus proelium commiserunt et, priusquam legiōnēs plānē explicārī possent, tōta auxilia rēgis, quae nullō ōrdine et sine metū iter faciēbant, in fugam coniecta sunt. Equitēs hostium per litus in oppidum prope-rāvērunt, peditum autem magnus numerus interfectus est.
- 15 Proximā nocte centuriōnēs duo ex castris Cūriōnis cum manipulāribus suis duōbus et vīgintī ad Attium Vārum per-fugiunt; cui cōfirmant tōtius exercitūs animōs aliēnōs esse

1. ad Bagradam: cf. p. 145, l. 10. In connection with in castra, translate "at the Bagrada"; cf. ad T. Labiēnum . . . in hiberna, p. 133, l. 3.

3. opere: *i.e.* construction.

4. statiōne: statiō, -ōnis, F., outpost.—auxilia: *auxiliary forces.*

5. Iubā: king of Numidia, friendly to Pompey (cf. p. 147, l. 5 ff.).—venire: *i.e.* appropinquare ad.—eōdem . . . tempore: *i.e.* simul.

6. cernēbātur: cf. cernēbantur, p. 141, l. 7.—temporis pūctō: in

a moment (pūctum, -ī, N., *point*).—primum agmen: *vanguard*; lit. what?

9. opere: (*the work of*) construction (cf. l. 3).

11. legiōnēs: sc. Cūriōnis.

12. sine metū: evidently they had not heard of Curio's arrival in Africa.

13. oppidum: *i.e.* Utica.

16. Attium Vārum: commander of the Pompeian forces at Utica.

17. aliēnōs . . . ā: *freely, disaffected toward.*

ā Cūriōne, multōsque facultāte datā libenter esse trānsitūrōs. Qua ōrātiōne adductus Vārus posterō diē māne legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūcit. Facit idem Cūriō, atque ūnā valle nōn magnā interpositā suās uterque cōpiās instruit.

- 5 Erat in exercitū Vārī lēgātus quīdam, cui nōtī erant multī Cūriōnis militēs. Hanc ille nactus appellātiōnis causam, circumīre aciem Cūriōnis atque omnēs hortārī coepit, ut Vārum sequerentur; quīn etiam praemium pollicitus est, sī quī ad eum trānsire voluissent. Hīs verbīs audītis, nūllam
10 in partem ab exercitū Cūriōnis fit significātiō, atque ita suās uterque cōpiās reducit.

LESSON 120

He maintains his Army's Loyalty to Caesar

At in castrīs Cūriōnis animī omnium sollicitī erant; quisque enim ad id, quod ab aliō audierat, aliquid suī timōris addēbat.

- 15 Cōnsiliō convocātō, duae sententiae dictae sunt. Erant quī castra Vārī statim oppugnanda cēnsērent; alterī autem

1. facultāte datā: translate as a conditional clause.—esse trānsitūrōs: *i.e. will desert* (to Varus).

3. castrīs: built just outside the city walls.—ēdūcit: ēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out*.—idem: note the gender.

4. uterque: as noun.

6. appellātiōnis: appellātiō, -ōnis, F., *accosting*; translate here *accosting* (them).—causam: freely, *excuse* (for).

8. Vārum sequerentur: *i.e. join* the army of Varus.

9. sī quī: *if any* (noun); cf. the note on quīd, p. 56, l. 1.—

eum: *i.e. Vārum*.—voluissent: freely, *were willing*; cf. *esset perruptus*, p. 107, l. 3.—nūllam in partem: see the Vocab. under *pars*.

10. significātiō (-ōnis, F.): *sign*.—ita: *i.e. with the loyalty* of Curio's troops still a matter of doubt.

12. sollicitī: sollicitus, -a, -um, *unsettled*.—quisque: noun.

13. ad id, quod: freely, *to what*.—suī: cf. *suum*, p. 11, l. 6; for syntax of the gen. phrase, cf. *glōriae*, p. 107, l. 17.

16. cēnsērent: cf. the note on *erant quī*, p. 109, l. 5.—alterī: *i.e. the other party*.

optimum factū existimābant in Castra Cornēlia legiōnēs redūcere, ut maiōre spatiō temporis interpositō militum mentēs sānārentur, simul ut exercitus, si proeliō victus esset, in Siciliam facile trānsportārī posset. Cūriō tamen “ Neutrum
5 cōnsilium,” inquit, “ probō; neque enim tantī sum animī, ut castra tam mūnīta temerē oppugnanda cēnseam, neque tantī timōris, ut spem statim dīmīttam, atque omnia prius experienda arbitror.”

Quārē, dīmīssō cōnsiliō, cōntiōnem advocat militum;
10 quōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmat, docetque quid sit causae, cūr sibi Caesarīque fidēlēs sint. Quā ōrātiōne permōtī milītēs eum etiam dīcentem interpellābant, discēdentem vērō ex cōntiōne ūniversī cohortantur ut magnō sit animō nēve dubitet proelium committere et suam fidem virtūtemque
15 experīrī.

1. factū: cf. p. 126, l. 17; omit here in translating.

2. maiōre: absol. compar.— mentēs: mēns, mentis, F., *feeling*, lit. *mind*.

3. sānārentur: sānō, I, *heal*, pass., *become normal*.— simul: *i.e. furthermore*.

4. neutrum: neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither* (of two).

5. cōnsilium: contrast the meaning here and on p. 149, l. 15.— neque: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

7. prius: *i.e.* before giving up hope.— experienda: experior, 4, *expertus sum, try*.

9. cōntiōnem: *assembly*.— advocat: advocō, I, *call together*.

10. verbīs: sc. suis.— quid . . . causae: *what grounds*; for syntax

of the gen., cf. sui timōris, p. 149, l. 13.

11. sint: lit. *they should be*; translate the clause freely.

12. eum: *i.e.* Cūriōnem.— etiam dīcentem: translate this and the following part. by clauses.— interpellābant: *kept interrupting* (interpellō, I).— discēdentem: sc. eum.

13. cōntiōne: *the meeting*.— ūniversī: freely, *one and all*.— magnō . . . animō: for syntax, cf. the note on p. 135, l. 2.— nēve: *and not to* (nē + ve); cf. neque (in sense = nōn + quē).

14. fidem: *loyalty*; cf. fidēlēs, l. 11.

15. experīrī: *make trial of*; cf. l. 7.

LESSON 121

The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse

Quibus rēbus cōfirmātus Cūriō cōstituit, cum primum esset data potestās, proeliō rem committere; postrīdiēque militēs prōductōs eōdem locō, quō ante cōstitierant, in aciē collocāvit. Quō animadversō, Vārus quoque cōpiās prōdūxit, nē, si aequō locō darētur occāsio, dīmicanđi facultātem dīmitteret.

Erat vallēs inter duās aciēs, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, nōn ita magna, at difficilī et arduō ascēnsū. Hanc uterque sī adversāriōrum cōpiae trānsire cōnārentur, exspectābat, quō aequiōre locō proelium ipse committeret. Postrēmō Vārī equitēs in vallem dēscendere coepērunt. Ad eōs Cūriō equitātum et duās cohortēs mittit; quōrum primum impetum equitēs hostium nōn ferunt, sed admissis equis ad suōs refugiunt.

Quā rē animadversā, legiōnēs sē sequi iubet Cūriō, et omnibus cum cōpiis in vallem cōnfestim dēscendit; interim autem hostēs, veritī nē ab equitātū circumvenirentur, terga vertunt ūniversi, ac summā celeritāte sē in castra recipiunt.

2. esset data: cf. exspectāssent, p. 104, l. 18. — proeliō: dat. case.

3. eōdem locō: construe with collocāvit, l. 4. — quō: antecedent, locō.

5. darētur: *i.e. should present itself*. — dīmicanđi: gerund.

7. suprā: namely, p. 149, l. 3 ff.

8. ita: *so very*. — arduō: arduus, -a, -um, *steep*. — ascēnsū: ascēnsus, -ūs, M., *slope*. — hanc: object of trānsire, l. 9. — uterque: *each (commander)*.

9. sī: *in the hope that*. — adversāriōrum: adversārii, -ērum, M., *the opposing party*. — exspectābat: cf. interpellābant, p. 150, l. 12.

10. quō: cf. the note on p. 101, l. 14.

13. hostium: *i.e. Varus' party*. — admissis: admissus, -a, -um, part., *let go, i.e. at full speed*.

17. equitātū: sc. Cūriōnis (cf. l. 12).

18. castra: cf. the note on p. 149, l. 3.

LESSON 122

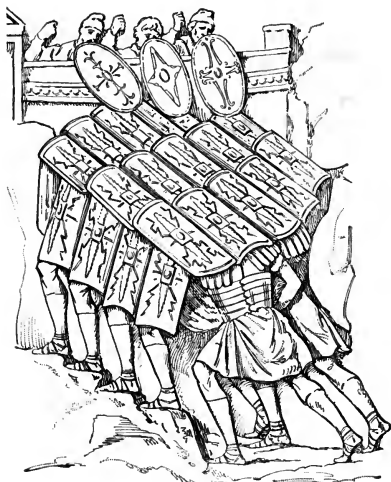
Narrow Escape of their Commander

Quā in fugā Fabius Paelignus, miles quidam ex Cūriōnis exercitū, agmen fugientium cōsecūtus, magnā vōce Vārum ita nōmine appellāvit, ut ūnus esse ex eius militibus et velle aliquid dicere vidērētur. Ubi autem Vārus saepius appellātus cōstitit, et quis esset aut quid vellet quaesivit, tum Fabius eius umerum apertum gladiō appetiit. Quod ille periculum sublātō scūtō vitāvit; Fabius autem ā proximīs militibus circumventus interficitur.

Interim fugientium multitudīne portae castrōrum complētae sunt, atque iter erat ita impeditum, ut plūrēs in eō locō sine vulnere quam in proeliō aut fugā interirent; nōnnulli vērō erant adeō perterriti, ut prōtinus eōdem cursū per castra in oppidum ipsum contenderent. At Cūriōnis milites, ad proelium ēgressi, sēcum nullam cōpiam portāverant eārum rērum, quae ad oppugnātiōnem castrōrum erant ūsuī. Itaque Cūriō exercitum tum in castra redūcit.

Cuius discessū vulnerātī ē castris hostium in oppidum redūcuntur; quō quidem tempore multī praetereā per simulātiōnem vulnerum propter metum eōdem sēsē recipi-

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. in: <i>during</i> . | 13. castra: see again the note on p. 149, l. 3. — ipsum: <i>proper</i> . |
| 2. fugientium: sc. hostium. | 14. proelium: <i>a battle (in the open)</i> . — ēgressi: sc. ex castris; translate the part. by a relative clause. |
| 4. saepius: absol. compar. | 16. tum: <i>for the time being</i> . |
| 5. aut: cf. the note on p. 128, l. 7. | 17. discessū: abl. of time when; translate "on." |
| 6. apertum: <i>unprotected, i.e. the right</i> .—ille: Varus. | 18. quidem: omit in translating. — per: <i>freely, under</i> . |
| 7. scūtō: scūtum, -ī, N., <i>shield</i> . | 19. eōdem: adv., <i>to the same shelter</i> . |
| 10. iter: <i>roadway</i> . | |
| 11. sine vulnere: <i>i.e. wound inflicted by the enemy</i> . | |
| 12. adeō: the adv. — eōdem cursū: <i>i.e. without stopping</i> . | |



SCŪTA

This illustration, taken from the carvings on the column of Trajan (see page 40), shows how Roman soldiers, by locking their shields (*scūta*), formed a solid roof over their heads as they came up under a wall from which the enemy were sending down a shower of missiles.

unt. Quā rē animadversā exercitūsque timōre cōgnitō, Vārus, būcinātōre tabernāculisque paucis in castris ad speciem relictis, tertiā vigiliā reliquum quoque exercitum silentiō in oppidum reducit.

LESSON 123

King Juba marches to the Relief of Varus

5 Postrīdiē eius diēi Cūriō obsidēre Uticam coepit. Sed iam ad urbem perveniunt ā rēge Iubā nūntiī, quī illum adesse magnis cum cōpiis dīcant oppidānōsque dē dēfēnsiōne urbis hortentur. Nūntiābantur haec eadem Cūriōnī. Ille tamen primō rēgem nihil contrā sē ausūrum exīstimābat;
10 sed ubi certior est factus cōpiās Iubae ab Uticā minus quīnque et vigintī mīlia passuum abesse, relictis mūnitiōnibus sēsē in Castra Cornēlia recēpit. Hūc comportāre coepit omnia, quae ad obsidiōnem sustinendam ūsuī erant.

Dum haec fiunt, ex oppidānis per fugis audivit Iubam
15 aliō bellō esse revocātum, et Saburram, eius praefectum, parvis cum cōpiis Uticae appropinquāre. Quō auditō, cōnsilium temerē mūtāvit, proeliōque rem committere cōn-

2. būcinātōre: būcinātor, -ōris, m., *trumpeter*. — ad speciem: *i.e.* to keep up the appearance of occupancy.

5. eius diēi: omit in translating. The gen. depends upon the diē which enters into the composition of postrīdiē.

6. Iubā: see the note on p. 148, l. 5.

8. haec eadem: neut.; translate as singular.

10. minus: *less (than)*; cf. the use of *amplius*, p. 101, l. 3.

12. Castra Cornēlia: see again the map on p. 146.

13. omnia: *all sorts of things*. — obsidiōnem: of the same derivation as the verb obsidēre, l. 5.

14. per fugis: with adj. force, *deserting*.

15. aliō bellō: abl. of means. Apparently this item of news regarding Juba's movements was deliberately fabricated, the "desertions" from the city having been planned for the express purpose of deceiving Curio.

stituit. Quārē equitātum omnem primā nocte ad castra Saburrae praemittit; quī hostīs necopināntēs adortus, magnum eōrum numerum occidit. Quō factō, ad Cūriōnem equitēs redeunt captivōsque ad eum redūcunt.

LESSON 124

The Numidians resort to Strategy

5 Cūriō, cohortibus quīnque castris praesidiō relictis, omnibus cum cōpiis quārtā vigiliā profectus, sex mīlia passuum iam ipse prōgressus erat. Quī, victōriā equitātūs cōgnitā, etiam celerius iter fēcit; Iubam enim crēdēbat longē abesse, exiguāsque Saburrae cōpiās facile sē opprimere posse
10 existimābat.

Interim autem Iuba (cuius dē discessū falsō erat nūntiātum, quīque iam haud longē aberat), dē nocturnō proeliō certior factus, duo mīlia equitum eamque peditum partem, cui maximē cōfidēbat, Saburrae subsidiō mittit, ipseque
15 cum reliquīs cōpiis elephantisque sexāgintā lēnius subsequitur. Suspiciātus brevī Cūriōnem ipsum adfore, Saburra cōpiās equitum peditumque statim instrūxit atque eīs imperāvit ut simul atque nostrī in cōspectum vēnissent, simulatiōne timōris paulātim cēderent.

20 Quō factō, hostēs fugere Cūriō ratus legiōnēs dē collibus

1. ad: *i.e.* to attack.

11. falsō: adv., lit. *falsely*; render the clause freely.

12. quīque: *i.e.* quī + que. — nocturnō proeliō: see l. 1 ff.

14. cōfidēbat: cōfidō, 3, -fīsus sum, with dat., *rely (upon)*. — subsidiō: dat. of service.

15. elephantis: elephantus, -ī, m., *elephant*.

16. suspiciātus: translate as a present. — ipsum: as contrasted with his cavalry, which had already been in action. — adfore: *i.e.* adfutūrum esse.

18. simul atque: *i.e.* cum primum. — vēnissent: cf. the note on *expectāssent*, p. 104, l. 18.

19. simulatiōne: translate the abl. "with."

in plānitium dēdūxit; cumque longius esset inde prōgressus, cōfectō iam labōre exercitū, locō inīquō cōstitit. Tum suis signum subitō dat Saburra aciemque explicat. Peditātū primō ad speciem tantum ūtitur, equitēs in aciem
5 nostram inmittit.

LESSON 125

Curio's Army is Annihilated

Repentīnā rē minimē permōtus Cūriō ordinēs circumiit militēsque hortātus est ut spem omnem in virtūte pōnerent. Hī primō fortissimē dīmicābant; sed hostēs, quī numerō longē erant superiōrēs, mox aciem nostram circumventam
10 ā tergō adoriri coepērunt. Tum Cūriō, ubi perterritis omnibus cohortātiōnēs suās nōn audiri intellēxit, ūnam salūtis esse spem reliquam arbitrātus, proximōs collēs capere atque eō signa ferre iussit. Sed hōs quoque praeoccupat missus ā Saburrā equitātus.

15 Tum vērō ad summam dēspērātiōnem nostrī perveniunt, et Cn. Domitius, praefectus equitum, cum paucis equitibus circumsistēns, Cūriōnem ōrat ut fugā petat salūtem, et sē ab eō nōn discessūrum pollicētur. At Cūriō numquam sē,

1. longius: absol. compar. — inde: *i.e.* from the point where he had left the hills.

2. cōfectō: construe with exercitū.

4. primō: the adv.

8. dīmicābant: *kept up the fight.*

9. circumventam: translate as if circumvērunt eamque.

10. ā tergō: cf. p. 78, l. 18. — omnibus: noun, forming an abl. absol. with perterritis.

11. cohortātiōnēs: cohortātiō, -ōnis, F., *exhortation.*

12. spem: *chance.* — capere: *make for*; as subject, suōs may be supplied.

13. eō: the adv. — signa: see the notes on pp. 130, l. 1, and 131, l. 16. — hōs: *i.e.* collēs.

15. dēspērātiōnem: dēspērātiō, -ōnis, F., *despair.*

18. numquam sē, etc.: the indirect discourse depends upon cōnfirmat, p. 157, l. 2.

āmissō exercitū quem ā Caesare accēpisset, in eius cōn-
spectum reditūrum cōfirmat, atque ita pugnāns interficitur.

Ē proeliō equitēs nostrī perpaucī effūgērunt; quibuscum
nōnnūllī, quī equōrum reficiendōrum causā in itinere paulum
5 morātī erant, fugā tōtīus exercitūs procul animadversā, in-
columēs in castra sē contulērunt. Peditēs ad ūnum omnēs
interfecti sunt.

4. reficiendōrum: reficiō, 3,
-fēcī, -fectus, *refresh*.

6. castra: *i.e.* the camp at
Castra Cornēlia.

SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS

AN EPISODE FROM THE GALLIC WAR

(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, VI, 7, 8)

LESSON 126

Though disconcerted for the time being by Caesar's decisive victory over the Nervii (Lesson 115), the Treveri subsequently more than once threatened the winter camp of Labienus (cf. Lessons 112 and 116, and see the map on page 124).

Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī magnīs coāctīs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiīs Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne, quae in eōrum fīnibus hiemābat, adorīrī parābant; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse 5 legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positis castrīs ā milibus passuum xv, auxilia Germānōrum expectāre cōstituunt.

Labiēnus, hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritāte eōrum fore aliquam dīmīcandī facultātem, praesidiō quīnque

1. haec: *i.e.* events mentioned in the narrative from which this extract is taken.

2. cum: translate "and." — ūnā: *the one*.

4. viā: *than a journey*; abl. with the compar. — vēnisse: *i.e.* to reēnforce Labienus.

5. missū: missus, -ūs, M., lit. *sending*; here, *order*. — cōgnō-

scunt: cf. *commemorant*, p. 135, l. 6. — ā: as adv., *away* (with abl. of degree of difference).

8. temeritāte: cf. the adv. *temerē*.

9. eōrum: *on their part*. — dīmīcandī: *i.e.* before the Germans should arrive. — praesidiō . . . relictō: abl. absol. — quīnque cohortium: (*consisting*) of five cohorts.

cohortium impedimentis relictō, cum xxv cohortibus magnōque equitatū contrā hostem proficiscitur, et mille passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpīsque praeruptis.
 5 Hoc neque ipse trānsire habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsitūrōs existimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotidiē spēs. Loquitur in cōnsiliō palam, quoniam Germānī appropinquāre dicantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum, et posterō diē primā lūce castra mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex
 10 magnō Gallōrum equitatūs numerō nōnnullōs Gallicis rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat.

LESSON 127

The Enemy are Deceived and become Overconfident

Labiēnus noctū tribūnīs militum primisque ordinibus convocātis, quid suī sit cōnsili, prōpōnit et, quō facilius

1. impedimentis: at this time Labienus had charge of the heavy baggage of Caesar's entire army.

2. hostem: sing. for pl., as in English. — mille: indeclinable adj., here as genitive.

3. intermissō: *i.e.* relictō (namely, between him and the enemy). — commūnit: commūniō, 4, *intrench*.

4. trānsitū: trānsitus, -ūs, M., *passage* (cf. trānsēō). — praeruptis: praeruptus, -a, -um, *rugged*.

7. spēs: namely, for the Treveri. — loquitur: subject, Labiēnus. — cōnsiliō: as on p. 126, l. 16. — quoniam: *inasmuch as*.

8. suās . . . fortūnās: *i.e.*

suam salutem. — exercitūsque: *and (that) of the army*.

9. dubium: *i.e.* periculum; lit. what? — dēvocātūrum: dēvocō, 1, *bring*; lit. *call*. — castra mōtūrum: *i.e.* he will fall back.

10. ut: *inasmuch as*. — ex: *out of*.

11. Gallōrum: *freely, recruited from among the Gauls* (cf. the note on p. 139, l. 10). — Gallicis rēbus: *the Gallic cause*.

13. ordinibus: *i.e.* centuriōnibus.

14. quid suī sit cōnsili: *what his plan involves*; lit. what? (for cōnsili, cf. Standisī, p. 16, l. 4). — prōpōnit: *i.e.* ostendit. — quō: see the note on p. 101, l. 14.

hostibus timōris det suspīciōnem, maiōre strepitū et tumultū, quam populī Rōmāni fert cōnsuetūdō, castra movērī iubet. Hīs rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per explorātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte 5 castrōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortātī inter sē, nē spērātam praedam ex manibus dīmitterent — longum esse, perterritis Rōmānis, Germānōrum auxilium expectāre, neque suam patī digni- 10 tātem ut tantis cōpiis tam exiguam manum, praesertim fugientem atque impeditam, adorīrī nōn audeant — flūmen trānsire et iniquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādē ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē prōgre- 15 diēbātur.

1. timōris: namely, on his part.

2. fert: *calls for*.

3. similem: pred. adj. — haec: neut.

4. per: freely, *by*; cf. p. 141, l. 9. — in tantā propinquitāte: freely, *on account of the close proximity* (propinquitās, -ātis, F., *nearness*).

6. agmen novissimum: namely, of Labienus' army. With this phrase cf. primum agmen, p. 148, l. 6. — prōcesserat: prōcēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est: *advance*.

7. inter sē: freely, *one another*.

8. longum esse: *it was needless* (lit. *too long*). The indirect discourse is due to the idea of saying implied in cohortātī, l. 7. Do not attempt to translate this paren-

thetical matter (between the dashes) until the rest of the sentence is clear.

10. ut: *that*; dependent on patī. — tantis cōpiis: see p. 158, l. 1.

11. fugientem atque impeditam: modifying manum, l. 10. — flūmen: see p. 159, l. 3 ff.

13. quae: neut., *this*. — fore: supplying here a future infinitive for fiō. — ut: depending on prōgre-diēbātur, l. 14. — omnēs: *them all*. — citrā: prep., *to the near side of, i.e. to his side of*.

14. ūsus: *keeping up*. — itineris: here, *retreat*. — placidē: adv., *steadily*. — prōgre-diēbātur: *continued to move on*.

LESSON 128

They are Decisively Beaten

Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumulō quōdam collocātis, “Habētis,” inquit, “militēs, quam petistis facultātem; hostem impeditō atque iniquō locō tenētis: praestāte eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem, quam saepenumero imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec cōram cernere existimāte.” Simul sīgna ad hostem convertī aciemque dērigī iubet; paucīs turmīs praesidiō ad impedimenta dīmissīs reliquōs equitēs ad latera dispōnit.

Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pila in hostēs inmittunt. 10 Illī ubi praeter spem, quōs modo fugere crēdēbant, infēstis sīgnīs ad sē ire vidērunt, impetum ferre nōn potuērunt, ac primō concursū in fugam coniectī proximās silvās petivērunt. Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōsectātus, magnō numerō interfectō, complūribus captis, paucīs post diēbus civitātem 15 recēpit. Nam Germānī, quī auxiliō veniēbant, perceptā Trēverōrum fugā, sēsē domum recēpērunt.

1. tumulō: tumulus, -ī, M.,
hillock.

2. inquit: subject, Labiēnus.
—militēs: voc. case.—quam petistis facultātem: *i.e.* eam facultātem quam petivistis.

4. nōbīs ducibus: *i.e.* mē duce (abl. absol.). The use of the first person pl. for the corresponding sing. is very common.—saepenumero: *i.e.* saepe; strictly, numero is abl. of specification.

5. imperātōrī: freely, *before the eyes of your commander in chief* (*i.e.* Caesar).—haec: *this action.*

6. cōram: adv., *in person.*—cernere: *i.e.* vidēre.—sīgna . . .

convertī: a signal to change front.

7. dērigī: *i.e.* instruī (dērigō, 3, -rēxī, -rēctus).

8. ad: *on.*

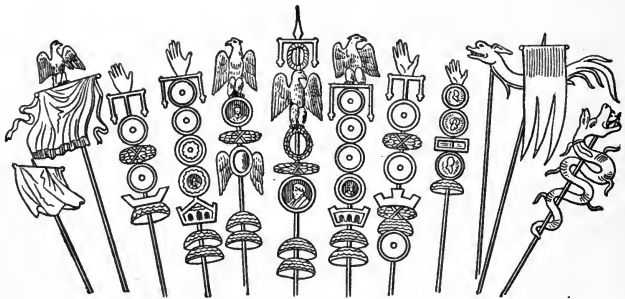
10. praeter: *i.e.* *contrary to*.—spem: *expectation.*—quōs: supply as antecedent, eōs, *those* (subject of ire, l. 11).

11. ad . . . ire: freely, *advancing upon.*—ac: freely, *but.*

12. concursū: concursus, -ūs, M., *clash* (cf. COLLURRŌ).

13. cōsectatus: cōsector, 1, *follow up.*

15. recēpit: sc. in dēditionem.—perceptā. *i.e.* cōgnitā (percipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus).



SIGNA

With these standards compare those shown in the illustrations on page 132. Flags (*vexilla*) were used for giving signals, and to differentiate small bodies of troops. In the matter of inspiring loyalty among the men, their effect was in general very slight as compared with that of the flag in modern armies.

AN EPISODE FROM THE CIVIL WAR

(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Cīvīlī*, III, 95-98)

LESSON 129

When, in 49 B.C., Caesar marched some of his troops south into Italy, and thus precipitated the civil war between himself and Pompey (cf. the episode in Lessons 117-125), Pompey was taken by surprise, and retired into Greece. In the decisive battle of Pharsalus, fought there in the following year, Caesar gained the first advantage, driving the Pompeians back to the shelter of their ramparts.

Caesar, Pompēiānis ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsis, nūllum spatium perterritis dari oportere existimāns, militēs cohortātus est ut beneficiō Fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsi magnō aestū fatigātī—nam ad 5 meridiem rēs erat perducta—tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parātī, imperiō pārūerunt.

Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relictæ, industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarisque auxiliis. Nam quī ex aciē refūgerant militēs, 10 et animō perterriti et lassitudine cōfecti, missis plēriquer

1. vāllum: *i.e.* of their own camp.

2. spatium: *respice*.—perterritis: modifying eis, supplied.—dari oportere: *should be allowed* (oportet, 2, -uit, impersonal verb, lit. *it is fitting*).

4. aestū: aestus, -ūs, M., heat.—fatigātī: *i.e.* dēfessī (fatigō, 1).

5. meridiem: here, *midday*.—rēs: *engagement*.

6. animō: abl. of specification; translate freely.

7. castra: namely, of Pompey.—industriē: adv., *energetically*.

8. multō: construe with ācrius.

9. -que: *and (other)*.—quī . . . militēs: *i.e.* ei militēs, quī.—aciē: *i.e.* proeliō.

10. lassitudine: lassitūdō, -inis, F., *weariness*.—missis: *discarded* (cf. dimitto).—plēriquer: freely,

armis signisque militāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius, quī in vāllō cōstiterant, multitudinem tēlōrum sustinere potuerunt, sed cōfecti vulneribus locum reliquerunt, 5 prōtinusque omnēs, ducibus ūsi centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum, in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōfūgērunt.

Caesar, castris potitus, ā militibus contendit nē, in praedā occupāti, reliquī negōtī gerendī facultātem dimit-
10 terent. Quā rē impetrātā, montem opere circummūnīre instituit.

LESSON 130

Unconditional Surrender of the Pompeians

Pompēiāni, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffisi eī locō, relicto monte, ūniversi iugis eius Lārīsam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā, Caesar cōpiās suās divisit,

in the majority of cases; the word agrees with *militēs*, though in sense it belongs with the abl. absol. Be careful to make the rendering of this sentence idiomatic throughout.

1. *militāribus*: *militāris*, -is, -e, lit. *military*. *signa militāria* is the full expression for "standards"; usually the adj. is omitted. — *dē reliquā fugā*: *i.e.* about *resuming their flight*.

2. *diūtius*: absol. compar.

3. *in vāllō*: *i.e.* to defend it.

4. *locum*: (*their*) *posts*.

5. *ducibus ūsi*: lit. *having (as) leaders*; translate freely.

6. *altissimōs*: absol. superl.

7. *cōfūgērunt*: *cōfugiō*, 3,

-fūgī, with *in* and the acc., *take refuge (upon)*.

8. *contendit*: *i.e.* *petivit*.

10. *montem*: *i.e.* the particular height upon which the Pompeians had finally assembled. — *circummūnīre*: *circummūniō*, 4, *girdle*.

11. *instituit*: *i.e.* *coepit* (*instituiō*, 3, *-stitui*, *-stitūtus*).

12. *diffisi*: *diffidō*, 3, *-fisis sum*, with *dat.*, *lack confidence (in)*.

13. *iugis*: *iugum*, -ī, N., *ridge*; translate the abl. "along" (way by which). — *eius*: *i.e.* *montis*. — *Lārīsam*: a town some miles north, toward which Pompey had already fled, making for the sea. — *versus*: translate as if *ad* . . . *versus* (cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21).

partemque legiōnum in castris Pompēi remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remisit, IV sēcum legiōnēs dūxit, commodiōreque itinere Pompēiānis occurrere coepit, et prōgressus milia passuum VI, aciem instrūxit. Quā rē
 5 animadversā, Pompēiāni in quōdam monte cōstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat. Caesar militēs cohortātus, etsi tōtius diēi continentī labōre erant cōfectī noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnitiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompēiāni possent.

- 10 Quō perfectō opere, illi dē dēditiōne missis lēgātis agere coepērunt. Paucī ōrdinis senātōrii, quī sē cum his cōiūxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petivērunt. Caesar primā lūce omnēs eōs, quī in monte cōnsēderant, ex superiōribus locis in plānitiam dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit.
 15 Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt, passisque palmis prōiectī ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petivērunt, cōnsōlātus cōnsurgere iussit et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōservāvit.

1. Pompēi: cf. the note on Standisi, p. 16, l. 4. — remanēre: remaneō, 2, -mānsi, -mānsū est, remain.

2. sua: note the position.

3. commodiōre: i.e. than the route taken by the enemy.

6. subluēbat: subluō, 3, —, —, wash the base of.

7. continentī: as adj. (abl. case), unbroken.

8. suberat: i.e. aderat (subsum, -esse, -fui). — sēclūsit: sēclūdō, 3, -clūsī, -clūsus, shut off.

9. aquārī: aquor, 1, get water.

10. opere: i.e. the mūnitiō of l. 8. — dē dēditiōne: construe with agere.

11. senātōrii: senātōrius, -a,

-um, senatorial; the highest order in the Roman state (cf. the note on p. 125, l. 9). — his: i.e. the Pompeian forces.

12. nocte: i.e. noctū.

15. recūsātiōne: recūsātiō, -ōnis, F., protest (cf. recūsō). — palmis: i.e. manibus (palma, -ae, F.) — prōiectī: freely, falling forward.

16. salūtem: i.e. (their) lives. — cōnsōlātus: sc. eōs.

17. cōnsurgere: i.e. surgere (cōnsurgō, 3, -surrēxi, -surrēctum est). — apud eōs: in their hearing, i.e. to them. — lēnitāte: lēnitās, -ātis, F., humaneness.

18. quō: note the compar. in the clause. — minōre . . . timōre: abl. of characteristic.

THE DEATH OF CAESAR

(Suetonius, *Iulius*, 81, 82)

LESSON 131

As a result of the civil war, Caesar became master of the Roman world. Many did not approve of his absolute power, and a plot was formed to take his life. As he left home for the senate house on the fatal day, some one pushed into his hand a document telling of the conspiracy; but he did not stop to examine it.

Plūribus hostiis caesis, cum litāre nōn posset, introiit cūriam sprētā religiōne Spurinnamque irrīdēns et ut falsum arguēns, quod sine ūllā suā noxā Idūs Mārtiae adessent: quamquam is vēnisse quidem eās diceret, sed nōn praeter-
5 isse. Assidentem cōspirātī speciē officii circumstetērunt; ilicōque Cimber Tillius, qui primās partēs suscēperat, quasi

1. plūribus: *i.e.* complūribus. — hostiis: *hostia*, -ae, F., *sacrificial victim*. — caesis: *caedō*, 3, *cecīdī*, *caesus*, *slay*. — cum: *concessive*. — litāre: *litō*, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *secure favorable omens*; the condition of the entrails of the slaughtered animals being supposed to portend good fortune or the reverse. — introiit: *introeō*, -īre, -iī, -itus, *enter*.

2. cūriam: *cūria*, -ae, F., *senate house*. — sprētā: from *spernō*. — Spurinnam: a priest who had predicted peril for Caesar on the 15th of March (*Idūs Mārtiae*, l. 3).

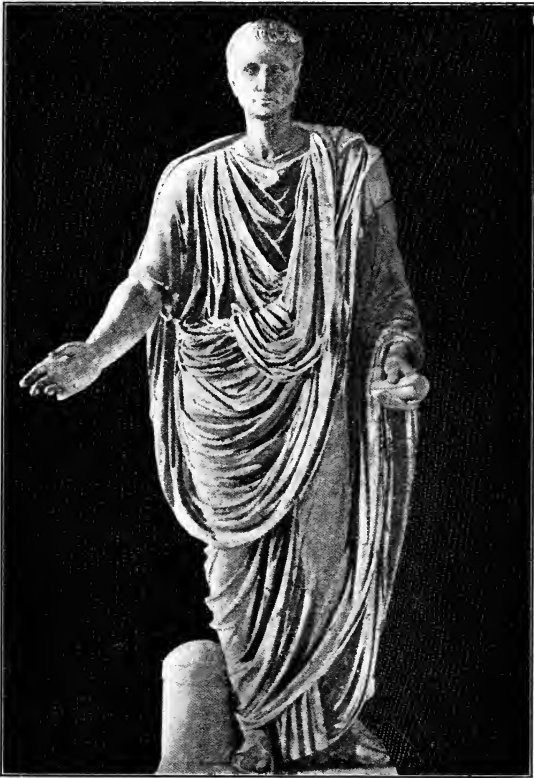
— irrīdēns (-entis, part.): *deriding*. — ut falsum: *as (a) false (prophet)*.

3. arguēns (-entis, part.): *asailing*. — quod: as on p. 55, l. 11. — suā noxā (*noxā*, -ae, F.): *harm to him (Caesar)*.

4. is: *i.e.* *Spurinna*.

5. assidentem: *sc. Caesarem (assidō*, 3, -sēdī, -sessum est, *take one's seat)*. — cōspirātī (-ōrum, M.): *the conspirators*. — officii: *of (showing) respect*.

6. ilicō (adv.): *i.e. statim*. — primās partēs: *i.e. the leading rôle*.



CAIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR

A Roman of distinguished family, and one of the ablest warriors the world has known.

aliquid rogātūrus propius accessit, renuentique et gestū in aliud tempus differentī ab utrōque umerō togam apprehendit; deinde clāmantem, "Ista quidem vis est," alter ē Cascis āversum vulnerat, paulum infrā iugulum.

5 Caesar Cascae brachium arreptum graphiō trāiēcit, cōnātusque prōsilire aliō vulnere tardātus est; utque animadvertit undique sē strīctis pūgiōnibus petī, togā caput obvolvīt, simul sinistrā manū sinum ad īma crūra dēdūxit, quō honestius caderet, etiam inferiōre corporis
10 parte vēlātā. Atque ita tribus et vīgintī plāgis cōfossus est, ūnō modo ad primum ictum gemitū sine vōce ēditō; etsi trādidērunt quīdam Mārcō Brūtō inruentī dīxisse, "Καὶ

1. aliquid rogātūrus: *intending to make some request*; lit. what? — renuenti: sc. Caesarī (renuō, 3, -nuī, *shake (one's) head*); translate by a clause introduced by "as"; the lit. meaning of the dat. is "for." — gestū: gestus, -ūs, M., *gesture*.

2. differentī: sc. eum, lit. *putting (him) off*. — ab: *at*; cf. the use of *ex* in phrases like *omnibus ex partibus*. — togam: toga, -ae, F., *robe*. — apprehendit: apprehendō, 3, -prehendī, -prehēnsus, *lay hold of*.

3. clāmantem: sc. Caesarem. — ista: for istud (subject of *est*); cf. the agreement of quod, p. 30, l. 6. — vis: (*downright*) *violence*. — Cascis: the two were brothers (nom. Casca).

4. āversum: *from behind*, lit. *turned away*. — infrā: prep., *below*. — iugulum: iugulum, -ī, N., *neck*.

5. brachium: brachium, -ī, N., *arm*. — graphiō: graphium, -ī, N., *stylus*. — trāiēcit: trāiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, *pierce*.

6. prōsilire: prōsiliō, 4, -uī, *leap forward*. — tardātus est: tardō, 1, *stop*. — ut: *i.e. ubi*.

7. strīctis: strīctus, -a, -um, part., *drawn*. — pūgiōnibus: *i.e. sicis* (pūgiō, -ōnis, M.). — togā: cf. l. 2.

8. obvolvīt: obvolvō, 3, -volvī, -volūtus, *shroud*. — sinistrā: sinister, -tra, -trum, *left*. — sinum: sinus, -ūs, M., *fold*; translate here as pl., (*its*) *folds*. — ad īma crūra: *i.e. to his ankles* (crūs, crūris, N., *leg*).

9. honestius: honestē (adv.), *in seemly fashion*.

10. vēlātā: *i.e. tectā* (vēlō, 1). — plāgis: *i.e. vulneribus* (plāga, -ae, F.).

11. ūnō: construe with gemitū. — modo: *i.e. tantum*. — ad: *at*. — ictum: ictus, -ūs, M., *blow*. — vōce: articulation.

12. inruentī: inruēns, -entis, part., *pressing forward*. — dīxisse: sc. eum (*i.e. Caesarem*). — Καὶ σὺ τέκνον; *you too, my boy?*

σὺ τέκνον;” Exanimis, diffugientibus cūnctīs, aliquamdiū iacuit, dōnec lectīcae impositum, dēpendente bracchiō, trēs servolī domum rettulērunt. Nec in tot vulneribus, ut Antistius medicus existimābat, lētāle ūllum repertum est, nisi 5 quod secundō locō in pectore accēperat.

THE FATE OF HANNIBAL

(Nepos, *Hannibal*, 12, 13)

LESSON 132

The second Punic War, waged between the Romans and Carthaginians from 218 to 201 B.C., ended in a complete victory for the Romans. The latter, however, were suspicious that Hannibal, the most famous general of the Carthaginians, was simply biding his time to renew the war under more favorable conditions ; and so they desired to arrest and hold him as a prisoner. By hastening into exile, Hannibal escaped for some years, and improved the opportunity to stir up a great deal of trouble for the Romans in the East.

Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīnctium Flāminīnum cōsulārem

1. exanimis (-is, -e) : *lifeless*. — diffugientibus : diffugiō, 3, -fūgī, scatter. — cūnctis : *i.e.* omnibus, as noun (cūnctī, -ae, -a).

2. lectīcae : lectica, -ae, F., litter. — dēpendente : dēpendēs, -entis, part., *hanging down*. — bracchiō : cf. p. 168, l. 5.

3. servolī : servulus, -ī, M., *young slave*; cf. servus. — rettulērunt : sc. eum. — in : *among*. — ut : *as*.

4. medicus (-ī, M.) : *physician*. — lētāle : *i.e.* exitiāle (lētālis, -is,

-e). — nisi quod : *excepting (one) which*.

5. secundō : *i.e.* specially vulnerable; lit. favorable. — pectore : pectus, -oris, N., *chest*.

6. quae : *i.e.* events narrated in previous chapters. — Asiā : *i.e.* Asia Minor. — accidit : impersonal expression. — cāsū : *i.e.* forte. — Prūsiae (nom. in -a, or -ās) : king of Bithynia (cf. p. 170, l. 5). The gen. may be rendered “from.”

7. cōsulārem : cōsulāris, -is, M., *ex-consul*.

cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā, ex eis ūnus dīceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminīnus senātui dētulit. Patrēs cōnscriptī, quī Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine insidiis futūrōs existimārent, 5 lēgātōs in Bithyniam misērunt (in eis Flāmininum), quī ab rēge peterent, nē inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret sibi que dēderet. Hīs Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est. Illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitii esset; ipsī, sī possent, comprehēderent; locum, 10 ubi esset, facile inventūrōs.

LESSON 133

Death rather than Captivity

Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō, quod ei ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sic aedificārat, ut in omnibus

1. mentiōne: mentiō, -ōnis, F., *mention*.

2. dīceret: in the same construction as cēnārent, l. 1. — eum: Hannibal.

3. patrēs cōnscriptī: *i.e. the senators* (cōnscriptus, -a, -um, lit. *enrolled*). — Hannibale vivō: abl. absol.; translate by a clause introduced by "as long as."

4. existimārent: subjunctive in a causal relative clause.

5. in eis: cf. p. 38, l. 14.

6. inimīcissimum suum: *their deadly foe*. — sēcum habēret: *i.e. harbor*.

7. sibi que dēderet: *i.e. eumque ut sibi dēderet*. — hīs: *i.e. lēgātis*. — illud . . . nē: *this . . . that*.

8. id: *a thing*; antecedent of quod. — adversus (prep.): *i.e. contrā*.

9. hospitii: *hospitium, -i, N., hospitality*. — ipsī . . . comprehēderent: sc. eum, *i.e. let them arrest him themselves*.

10. inventūrōs: sc. eōs (subject). The indirect discourse depends upon the idea of saying underlying recūsāvit, l. 8; cf. longum esse, etc., p. 160, l. 8.

11. enim: referring to what is said in the last clause of Lesson 132. — in: *namely, in*.

12. rēge: *i.e. Prūsia*. — mūnerī: *i.e. dōnō, dat. of service* (mūnus, -eris, N.). — aedificārat: *i.e. aedificāverat*.

partibus aedificiū exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē ūsū veniret, quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānī vēnissent ac multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, puer, ab iānuā prōspiciēns, Hannibalī dixit plūris praeter cōsuētūdinem armātōs appārere. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnīs forīs circumīret ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid vīdisset renūntiāset, omnīsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vītam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dimitteret, memor pristinārum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habere cōsuērat, sūmpsit. Sic vir fortissimus, multīs variisque perfūctus labōribus, annō acquiēvit septuāgēsīmō.

1. aedificiū: aedificium, -ī, N., structure. — verēns: *i.e.* veritus. — ūsū veniret: sc. id (subject), *i.e.* that (thing) would happen.

2. quod accidit: which (actually) did come to pass (namely, the discovery by the Romans of his hiding place). — hūc: cf. p. 154, l. 12.

3. puer: *i.e.* servus. — iānuā: iānuā, -ae, F., door.

4. plūris: modifying armātōs, l. 5. — praeter cōsuētūdinem: than usual; lit. beyond the ordinary.

5. appārere: *i.e.* in cōspectū esse (appāreō, 2, -uī). — quī: *i.e.* Hannibal. — eī: *i.e.* puerō. — forīs: *i.e.* exitūs (cf. l. 1).

6. properē (adv.): *i.e.* celeriter. — num: conjunction, whether.

7. puer cum: *i.e.* cum puer. — renūntiāset: renūntiō, 1, report.

8. sēnsit: subject, Hannibal. — fortuitō (adv.): *i.e.* cāsū.

9. factum: sc. esse. — retinendam: render the gerundive by "could."

10. quam: *i.e.* vītam. — nē: freely, to avoid (with part. in -ing). — arbitriō: arbitrium, -ī, N., bidding.

11. virtūtum: freely, career of valor.

12. cōsuērat: *i.e.* cōsuēverat.

13. perfūctus: perfungor, 3, -fūctus sum, experience. This verb takes the same construction as ūtor and potior. — acquiēvit: acquiēscō, 3, -quiēvi, rest, *i.e.* die.

CATILINE'S CONSPIRACY

(Sallust. *Bellum Catilinae*, 40, 41, 60)

LESSON 134

In 63 B.C. Marcus Cicero (brother of the Quintus Cicero who subsequently figured in the events described in Lesson 108 ff.) had to deal with a rather alarming conspiracy which aimed to revolutionize the government of Rome. The chief conspirator, Catiline, took the field with an army, while Lentulus, who was secretly in sympathy with him, supervised matters in the city. One day Lentulus noticed there two Gallic envoys who had come to Rome to complain that Roman officials were oppressing their people, and he thereupon conceived the idea of further embarrassing the government by inducing these Gauls to stir up a revolt among their countrymen.

Igitur P. Umbrēnō cuidam negōtium dat, utī lēgātōs Allobrogum requīrat eōsque, sī possit, impellat ad societātem bellī, existimāns pūblicē prīvātimque aere aliēnō oppressōs, praetereā quod nātūrā gēns Gallica bellicōsa
5 esset, facile eōs ad tāle cōnsilium addūcī posse.

Umbrēnus, quod in Galliā negōtiātus erat, plērisque prīncipibus civitātium nōtus erat atque eōs nōverat. Itaque

1. P.: *i.e.* Pūbliō.—dat: subject, Lentulus. — utī: *i.e.* ut.

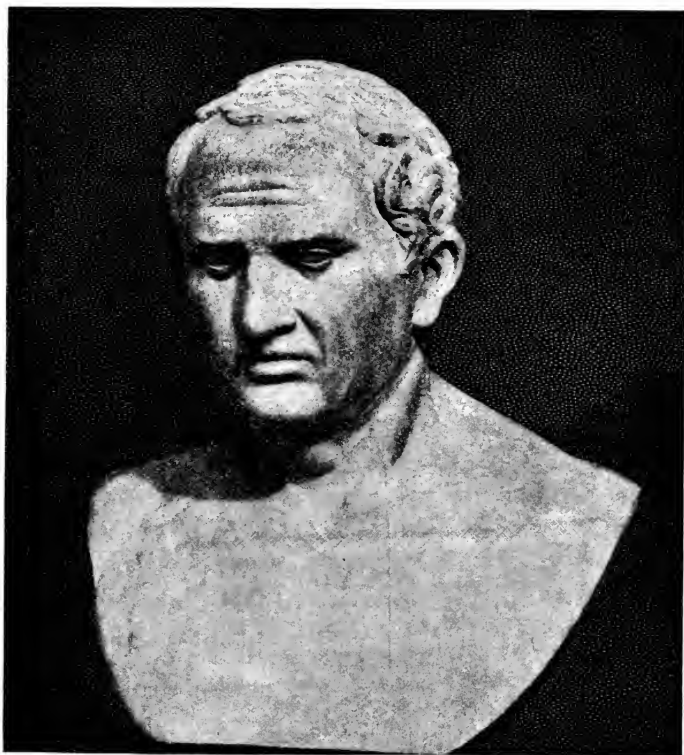
2. Allobrogum: a tribe of southeast Gaul. — requīrat: requirō, 3, -quisivī, -quisitus, *seek out*. — impellat: impellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, *incite*. — societātem: societās, -ātis, F., with gen., *partnership (in)*.

3. pūblicē prīvātimque: advs., *as a people and as individuals*.

4. oppressōs: modifying eōs (*i.e.* Allobrogēs) supplied. — bellicōsa: bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike*.

5. esset: for mood, cf. the note on *admoveantur*, p. 61, l. 14; translate as a present. — tāle: tālis, -is, -e, *such a*.

7. civitātium: cf. the note on p. 123, l. 11. — nōverat: nōscō, 3, nōvī, nōtus: *become acquainted with*.



MĀRCUS TULLIUS CICERŌ

The first of his family to reach the consulship, Cicero won some fame as a statesman by suppressing the conspiracy of Catiline ; but his chief and lasting distinction was along literary lines. In oratory he was hardly rivaled in his own generation ; and his writings are a priceless possession.

sine morā, ubi primum lēgātōs in forō cōspēxit, percontātus pauca dē statū civitātis et quasi dolēns eius cāsum, requirere coepit, quem exitum tantis malis spērarent. Postquam illōs videt queri dē avāritiā magistrātuum, accūsāre senātum quod in eō auxiliī nihil esset, miseris suis remedium mortem expectāre, “at ego,” inquit, “vōbis, sī modo viri esse vultis, ratiōnem ostendam, quā tanta ista mala effugiātis.”

LESSON 135

The Envoys are Initiated into the Conspiracy

Haec ubi dixit, Allobrogēs in maximam spem adducti,
 10 Umbrēnum orāre ut sui miseretur: nihil tam asperum neque tam difficile esse, quod nōn cupidissimē factūri essent, dum ea rēs civitatem aere aliēnō liberāret. Ille eōs in domum D. Brūtī perdūcit, quod forō propinqua erat

1. percontātus: percontor, 1, ask.

2. statū: status, -ūs, M., with gen., situation (*in*).—civitātis: sc. eōrum.—quasi: cf. p. 166, l. 6.—dolēns: doleō, 2, -uī, be concerned about.

3. requirere: inquire (cf. p. 172, l. 2).—exitum: solution, lit., way out (cf. p. 171, l. 1).—tantis malis: dat. case.

4. magistrātuum: magistrātus, -ūs, M., official.—accūsāre: accūsō, 1, rail at.

5. quod: cf. the note on p. 62, l. 13.—eō: *i.e.* senātū.—miseris: miseriae, -ārum, F., troubles.—remedium: (*as*) a solution (remedium, -ī, N.).

7. viri esse: *i.e.* play the part

of men.—tanta: freely, overwhelming.—ista: those . . . of yours.

10. orāre: for orāvērunt.—sui: gen. pl.—miseretur: miseror, 2, miseritus sum, with gen., take pity (*on*).—nihil, etc.: the indirect discourse is due to the idea of saying underlying orāre.

11. neque: translate “or.”—quod nōn . . . factūri essent: that they would not undertake it; a relative clause of result.

12. dum: provided only.—ea rēs: it.—aere aliēnō: translate the abl. “from” or “of.”—ille: Umbrenus.

13. in domum: cf. the note on p. 16, l. 11.—D.: *i.e.* Decimī.

neque aliēna cōnsilī propter Semprōniam: nam tum Brūtus ab Rōmā aberat. Praetereā Gabīnium arcēssit, quō maior auctōritās sermōnī inesset. Eō praesente coniūratiōnem aperuit, nōminat sociōs, praetereā multōs cuiusque generis 5 innoxīōs, quō lēgātis animus amplior esset. Deinde eōs pollicitōs operam suam domum dīmittit.

Sed Allobrogēs diū in incertō habuēre, quidnam cōnsilī caperent: in alterā parte erat aes aliēnum, studium belli, magna mercēs in spē victōriae, at in alterā maiōrēs opēs, 10 tūta cōnsilia, prō incertā spē certa praemia. Haec illis volventibus, tandem vicit fortūna rei pūblicaē. Itaque Q. Fabiō Sangae, cuius patrōciniō civitās plūrimum ūtēbātur, rem omnem, utī cōgnōverant, aperiunt. Cicerō, per San-

1. aliēna: with gen., *unfriendly* (*to*). — Semprōniam: wife of Brutus, who was himself not a party to the conspiracy.

2. quō: note the compar. in the clause. Umbrenus was a freedman, hence the need of calling in a conspirator of better social standing.

3. sermōnī: sermō, -ōnis, M., *interview*. — inesset: īnsum, inesse, infui, with dat., lit. *be (in)*; translate the phrase freely. — eō: *i.e.* Gabīniō.

4. nōminat: nōminō, I, *name*. — praetereā: (*and*) *in addition*.

5. innoxīōs: pred. adj. (*innocent*). — amplior: amplius, -a, -um, *great* (cf. the adv. amplius).

6. suam: modifier of operam. — domum: *i.e.* to their temporary quarters in Rome.

7. in incertō habuēre (for

habuērunt): freely, *were undecided*. — quidnam: *what . . . really*, -nam being an intensive particle. — cōnsilī: for syntax, cf. quid . . . causae, p. 150, l. 10.

8. alterā . . . alterā (l. 9): *the one . . . the other*. — studium (-ī, N.): with gen., *liking (for)*.

9. mercēs (-ēdis, F.): *inducement*. — opēs: namely, those of the government (ops, opis, F., *help*; pl., *resources*).

10. illīs: *i.e.* Allobrogibus.

11. volventibus: volvō, 3, volvī, volūtus, *turn over in (one's) mind*; cf. the note on dēfēdente, p. 44, l. 17. — tandem: adv., *at length*. — rei pūblicaē: sc. Rōmānae.

12. patrōciniō: patrōcinium, -ī, N., *legal services*. — plūrimum: see multum.

13. utī (*i.e.* ut): *as*. — cōgnōverant: sc. eam. — Cicerō: see the note at the head of Lesson 134.

gam cōsiliō cōgnitō, lēgātīs praecepit, ut studium cōiūrātiōnis vehementer simulent, cēterōs adeant, bene polliceantur, dentque operam uti eōs quam maximē manifestōs habeant.

LESSON 136

The envoys, pretending that it would be difficult to persuade their countrymen to revolt unless the matter were put into writing, easily secured thus from the conspirators evidence sufficient to convict nine of the ringleaders, five of whom were promptly executed in the public prison. Shortly afterward, in the north country, the army of Catiline (see the note at the head of Lesson 134) was brought to bay by the government forces, and he chose to try conclusions with a division which on the day of battle was under the command of a veteran officer named Petreius.

5 Sed ubi, omnibus rēbus explōrātīs, Petrēiūs tubā sīgnum dat, cohortīs paulātīm incēdere iubet; idem facit hostium exercitus. Postquam eō ventum est, unde [ā] ferentāriīs proelium committī posset, maximō clāmōre cum īnfēstīs sīgnīs concurrunt: pīla omittunt, gladiīs rēs geritur. Ve-

1. praecepit (for praecipit): *i.e.* imperat (praecipio, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus). — studium: cf. p. 175, l. 8.

2. cēterōs: *i.e.* the other conspirators in Rome.

3. utī: *that*. — maximē: cf. the note on p. 44, l. II. — manifestōs: manifestus, -a, -um, *obviously guilty*; translate the phrase freely.

5. sed: *now*. — explōrātīs: *inspected*. — tubā: tuba, -ae, F., *trumpet*. See the second illustration on p. 60.

6. dat: *if rendered as a past,*

use the pluperfect. — cohortīs: sc. suās. — incēdere: incēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, *advance*. — hostium: *i.e.* Catiline and his followers.

7. eō . . . unde: *to a point where* (lit. *whence*). — ferentāriīs: ferentārii, -ōrum, M., *light-armed troops* (e.g. slingers; cf. the top illustration on p. 140).

9. omittunt: *make no use of*; lit. *omit* (omittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus). Contrast the regular procedure for beginning battle, p. 161, l. 9 — rēs: *the fighting*. — veterānī: *i.e.* of the government army.

terānī, prīstinae virtūtis memorēs, comminus ācritēr īnstāre, illī haud timidē resistunt: maximā vī certātur.

Intereā Catilīna cum expeditis in primā aciē versārī, labōrantibus succurrere, integrōs prō sauciis arcēssere, 5 omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pugnāre, saepe hostem ferīre: strēnuī militis et bonī imperātōris officia simul exsequēbātur. Petrēius, ubi videt Catilīnam, contrā ac ratus erat, magnā vī tendere, cohorte:m praetōriam in mediōs hostis indūcit eōsque perturbātōs atque aliōs alibī resi-
10 stentis interficit, deinde utrimque ex lateribus cēterōs adgreditur. Mānlius et Faesulānus in primīs pugnantes cadunt. Catilīna, postquam fūsās cōpiās sēque cum paucis

1. *comminus*: adv., at close quarters. — *īnstāre*: *īnstō*, 1, -stitī, *press the fight*. Here, and several times below, the pres. infin. replaces a third person of the perf. or imperf. indic.

2. *illī*: *i.e. their opponents*. — *haud timidē*: *i.e. boldly (timidē, adv., with fear)*. — *certātur*: *i.e. dīmicātur (certō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est)*.

3. *primā*: *the front of*; cf. the use of *summum*, p. 104, l. 4.

4. *labōrantibus*: part. (sc. *eis*), *those hard pressed*. — *succurrere*: *i.e. auxiliō venire (succurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est)*. — *prō*: *freely, to replace*. — *sauciis*: *i.e. vulnerātis (saucius, -a, -um)*.

5. *ferīre*: *i.e. percutere (feriō, 4, —, —)*. — *exsequēbātur*: *i.e. praestābat (exsequor, 3, -secūtus sum)*; cf. p. 129, l. 9.

6. *contrā*: adv., lit. *differently*. — *ac*: *than, lit. as*. The whole phrase = *praeter spem*, p. 161, l. 10.

7. *tendere*: *tendō, 3, tetendī,*

tentus, stretch; here, *exert (one's self)*. — *mediōs*: *who occupy the center*.

8. *indūcit*: *indūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, lit. lead (against)*. — *atque*: connecting the two participles. — *aliōs alibī*: *some in one place, some in another*; cf. *alii in aliam*, p. 80, l. 5.

9. *utrimque*: adv., *on either side*. — *lateribus*: cf. *latera*, p. 161, l. 8, and (for the form of phrase) *omnibus ex partibus, etc.* — *adgreditur*: *i.e. adoritur (adgredior, 3, -gressus sum)*. Petreius first broke through the center, and then to the right and left made a flank attack upon the remnants of the enemy's line.

10. *Mānlius et Faesulānus*: *Manlius and the citizen of Faesulae (a town of Etruria), Catiline's chief lieutenants*. — *in primīs*: *i.e. in the front rank*.

11. *fūsās*: *fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, scatter*. — *paucis*: *i.e. (but) a handful*.

relictum videt, memor generis atque prīstinae suae dignitātis, in cōfertissimōs hostīs incurrit, ibique pugnāns cōnfoditur.

ON THE EASTERN FRONTIER

(Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs*, XV, 4)

LESSON 137

About ten years after the suppression of the conspiracy of Catiline, Cicero, much against his inclination, was appointed governor of Cilicia and neighboring districts. Below are given extracts from a letter which he wrote from the east to a friend at Rome, telling some of his experiences as a provincial officer.

Cum in prōvinciam pr. K. Sext. vēnissem, et propter 5 annī tempus ad exercitum mihi cōnfēstim esse eundum vidērem, bīduum Lāodicēae fui, deinde Apamēae quadrīduum, trīduum Synnadīs, totidem diēs Philomēlii. Quibus in oppidīs cum magnī conventūs fuissent, multās civitātēs acerbissimīs tribūtīs et gravissimīs ūsūrīs et falsō aere

1. generis . . . dignitātis: for his was an ancient and noble family, and he had himself held high offices.

2. hostis: *i.e.* the government forces.—incurrit: incurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est: *plunge (in among)*.

4. cum, etc.: translate by a partic. clause.—pr. K. Sext.: *i.e.* prīdiē Kalendās Sextilīs, *the day before the first of August (Sextilis, -is, -e)*, namely, July 29, as the calendar was then arranged.

5. cōnfēstim: for the winter would now soon come on (cf. p. 123, l. 1 ff.).—eundum: not eundem.

6. bīduum: cf. bīdūi, p. 158, l. 4.—Lāodicēae: see the western end of the map on p. 179.—fui: *I stopped*.

7. Synnadīs: pl. city names have the same form for loc. and abl.—totidem: indeclinable adj., *the same number of*.—Philomēlii: for case, cf. domī.

8. conventūs: conventus, -ūs, m., *circuit court*.—fuissent: freely, *had been held*.

9. acerbissimīs tribūtīs, etc.: for syntax, cf. aere aliēnō, p. 174, l. 12.—ūsūrīs: ūsūra, -ae, f., *rate of interest*.

aliēnō liberāvī. Cumque ante adventum meum sēditione quādam exercitus esset dissipātus, quinque cohortēs sine lēgātō, sine tribūnō militum, dēnique etiam sine centuriōne ūllō apud Philomēlium cōnsēdissent, reliquus exercitus 5 esset in Lycāoniā, M. Annēiō lēgātō imperāvī, ut eās quinque cohortēs ad reliquum exercitum dūceret, coāctōque in ūnum locum exercitū, castra in Lycāoniā apud Iconium faceret. Quod cum ab illō dīligenter esset factum, ego in castra a. d. vii K. Sept. vēnī, cum intereā superiō-
10 ribus diēbus ex senātūs cōsultō et ēvocātōrum firmam manum et equitātum sānē idōneum et populōrum liberōrum rēgumque sociōrum auxilia voluntāria comparāvissem.

LESSON 138

A War Scare

Interim, cum exercitū lūstrātō iter in Ciliciam facere coepissem, K. Sept. lēgātī ā rēge Commāgēnō ad mē

1. cumque: *and inasmuch as*. — sēditione: sēditō, -ōnis, F., *mutiny*.

2. quādam: *a sort of*. — esset dissipātus: dissipō, 1, *disrupt*. Supply et after this verb, and after cōnsēdissent, l. 4.

4. apud: *i.e. ad*; so also in l. 7.

8. quod: *relative*.

9. a. d. vii K. Sept.: *i.e. ante diem septimum Kalendās Septembrēs, the seventh (we would say, sixth) day before the first of September, namely, August 24, as the calendar was then arranged*. — cum, etc.: *translate by a participle*. — superiōribus: *the preceding*.

10. ex: *in accordance with*. — cōsultō: cōsultum, -ī, N., *decree*. — et . . . et . . . et: *both . . . and . . . and*. — ēvocātōrum: ēvocātus, -ī, M., *reënlisted man*.

11. sānē: *adv., quite*. — liberōrum: liber, -era, -erum, *independent, or free*. The genitives may be rendered freely "supplied by"; cf. Gallōrum, p. 159, l. 11.

12. sociōrum: *as adj., allied*. — voluntāria: voluntārius, -a, -um, *volunteer*. — comparāvissem: comparō, 1, *get together*.

13. lūstrātō: lūstrō, 1, *review*.

14. K. Sept.: *i.e. Kalendīs Septembris (abl. of time when)*. — Commāgēnō: *an adj.*

missi, tumultuōsē neque tamen nōn vērē Parthōs in Syriam trānsisse nūntiāvērunt; quō auditō, vehementer sum comōtus cum dē Syriā tum dē meā prōvinciā, dē reliquā dēnique Asiā.

5 Itaque in Cappadociā extrēmā nōn longē ā Taurō apud oppidum Cybistra castra fēcī, ut et Ciliciam tuērer et Cappadociam tenēns nova finitimōrum cōnsilia impedirem.

Intereā cōgnōvī multōrum litteris atque nūntiis magnās Parthōrum cōpiās et Arabum ad oppidum Antiochēam
10 accessisse, magnumque eōrum equitātum, quī in Ciliciam trānsisset, ab equitum meōrum turmīs et ā cohorte praetōriā, quae erat Epiphanēae praesidiī causā, occidiōne occisum. Quārē, cum vidērem ā Cappadociā Parthōrum cōpiās
āversās, nōn longē ā finibus esse Ciliciae, quam potuī maxi-
15 mīs itineribus, ad Amānum exercitum dūxī. Quō ut vēni,

1. missi: not misī. — tumultuōsē: adv., *in great alarm*. — nōn vērē: freely, *without foundation in fact* (vērē, adv., lit. *truthfully*). — Parthōs: two years before, the Romans had suffered crushing defeat at the hands of this warlike people.

3. cum . . . tum: *not only . . . but also*. — dē: *with reference to*. — meā: note the position of the word.

4. Asiā: as on p. 169, l. 6.

5. Cappadociā: see the map on p. 179. — extrēmā: extrēmus, -a, -um, lit. *farthest*; translate freely (cf. the rendering of primus, summus, etc.) — apud: as on p. 180, l. 4.

6. Cybistra: in apposition with oppidum; render, however, as if a genitive. — tuērer: tueor, 2, —, *protect*.

7. tenēns: *while occupying*. Cicero anticipated that the Parthian invaders would take this more northern route. — nova . . . cōnsilia: cf. rēs novās, p. 28, l. 10. — finitimōrum: translate the gen. "on the part of."

10. eōrum: *of theirs*.

11. turmīs: cf. p. 161, l. 7. The forces here mentioned Cicero had sent south at a venture (cf. the note on l. 7).

12. occidiōne occisum: *had been annihilated* (occidiō, -ōnis, F., *utter destruction*).

14. quam potuī maximīs: *i.e. the longest possible*; cf. the note on p. 142, l. 5.

15. Amānum: a mountain range near the eastern border of Cilicia. — ut: *i.e. ubi*.

hostem ab Antiochēā recessisse, Bibulum Antiochēae esse cōgnōvī. Dēiotarum cōnfēstim iam ad mē venientem cum magnō et firmō equitātū et peditātū et cum omnibus suis cōpiīs certiōrem fēcī nōn vidērī esse causam, cūr abesset ā 5 rēgnō, mēque ad eum, sī quid novī forte accidisset, statim litterās nūntiōsque missūrum esse.

LESSON 139

Mountain Brigands claim the Governor's Attention

Cumque eō animō vēnissem, ut utrīque prōvinciae, sī ita tempus ferret, subvenīrem, tum id, quod iam ante statueram vehementer interesse utrīusque prōvinciae, pācāre 10 Amānum et perpetuum hostem ex eō monte tollere, agere perrēxī. Cumque mē discēdere ab eō monte simulāssem

1. **ab**: from the neighborhood of (the town name without the prep. would mean rather "from"; cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21). — **recessisse**: recēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, fall back. — **Bibulum**: the (Roman) governor of Syria. Supply -que with this clause.

2. **Dēiotarum**: a friendly native king, whose offer of aid Cicero had been glad to accept. — **ad**: i.e. to join. — **venientem**: translate by a relative clause.

3. **et . . . et . . . et**: the first of these conjunctions connects the two adjs.; the remaining two may be rendered *and . . . and in fact*. — **suis cōpiīs**: his following.

4. **nōn vidērī esse causam, cūr abesset**: there did not seem to be (any) occasion for him to absent himself; lit. what?

5. **mē**: subject of a new main clause in the indirect discourse. — **sī quid**: if anything. — **novī**: as (neut.) noun. — **forte**: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

7. **cum**: causal. — **animō**: purpose. — **utrīque prōvinciae**: i.e. Cilicia and Syria. — **ita tempus ferret**: i.e. freely, should have opportunity.

8. **subvenīrem**: i.e. auxiliō essem (subveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est). — **tum**: now. — **id . . . agere perrēxī** (l. 11): I proceeded to carry out a project (pergō, 3, perrēxī, perrēctum est, proceed).

9. **interesse**: interest, -esse, -fuit, with gen., be to the interest (of). — **pācāre**: namely, (the project of) reducing to order.

10. **perpetuum hostem**: namely, some troublesome robber hordes.

11. **-que**: translate as if itaque.

et aliās partīs Ciliciae petere, abessemque ab Amānō iter ūnīus diēi et castra apud Epiphanēam fēcissem, a. d. iiii Īd. Oct., cum advesperāsceret, expeditō exercitū ita noctū iter fēcī, ūt a. d. iiii Īd. Oct., cum lūcisceret, in Amānum ascenderem; distribūtisque cohortibus et auxiliīs (cum aliīs Quīntus frāter lēgātus mēcum simul, aliīs C. Pomptīnus lēgātus, reliquīs M. Annēius et L. Tullius lēgātī praeessent), plērōsque necopinantis oppressimus: qui occīsī captique sunt, interclūsī fugā. Eranam autem (quae fuit non vīcī instar sed urbis, quod erat Amānī caput) itemque Sepyram et Commorim, ācritur et diū repugnantibus, Pomptīnō illam partem Amānī tenente ex antelūcānō tempore usque ad hōram diēi X, magnā multitudine hostium occīsā, cēpimus, castellaque vī capta complūra incendimus. Hīs

2. Epiphanēam: see the map on p. 179. — a. d. iiii Īd. Oct.: *i.e.* ante diem quārtum Īdūs Octōbrēs, *on the fourth* (we would say, *third*) *day before the Ides of October*, namely, Oct. 12.

3. expeditō: as adj.; cf. the noun use, p. 177, l. 3. — ita: *i.e. at such speed.*

4. a. d. iiii Īd. Oct.: Oct. 13 (cf. the note on l. 2). — lūcisceret: lūciscit, 3, —, —, *grow light.*

5. distribūtis: distribuō, 3, -uī, -ūtus, *divide up*, or *make a division of*. — cum aliīs Quīntus frāter . . . praeessent: *my brother Quintus . . . being in command of some*, etc. (cf. aliī . . . aliī, p. 20, l. 15).

6. lēgātus: (as) *lieutenant*; cf. Quīntus' similar relation to Caesar in the Gallic war. — simul: with mēcum.

8. plērōsque: sc. hostēs.

9. -que: we would say "or." — interclūsī: interclūdō, 3, -clūsī, -clūsus, *cut off*. — fugā: translate the abl. "from." — Eranam: (along with the town names of l. 11), object of cēpimus, l. 14.

10. instar: *the size (of)*; cf. p. 32, l. 5. — quod: (*and*) *which*; for the gender, cf. quod, p. 30, l. 6. — item: adv., *likewise.*

11. repugnantibus: *i.e. resister-tibus* (repugnō, 1); abl. absol. with iīs (*i.e. incolīs*) supplied. The two following clauses also are abl. absolutes.

12. tenente: *i.e. keeping to*. — antelūcānō: antelūcānus, -a, -um, *preceding dawn.*

13. X: *i.e. decimam*, ordinal and cardinal having the same sign; cf. the dates above.

14. vī capta: *i.e. expugnāta.*

rēbus ita gestīs, castra in rādīcibus Amānī habuimus apud Arās Alexandrī quadrīdium, et in reliquiīs Amānī dēlendīs agrisque vāstandīs, quae pars eius montis meae prōvinciae est, id tempus omne cōsūpsimus.

LESSON 140

Completion of the Destruction of their Strongholds

5 Cōfectīs hīs rēbus, ad oppidum Eletherocilicum Pindenissum exercitum addūxī. Quod cum esset altissimō et mūnītissimō locō, ab iisque incolarētur, quī nē rēgibus quidem umquam pāruiissent, cum et fugitivōs reciperent, et Parthōrum adventum ācerrimē expectārent, ad existimātiōnem imperī pertinēre arbitrātus sum comprimere eōrum audāciam, quō facilius etiam cēterōrum animī, quī aliēni essent ab imperiō nostrō, frangerentur.

Vallō et fossā circumdedī, sex castellīs castrisque maximīs saepsi, aggere, viniīs, turribus oppugnāvī, ūsusque tōr-

1. rādīcibus: *foothills* (rādīx, -īcis, F., lit. *root*).

2. reliquiīs: *i.e. the remaining landmarks*; cf. reliquiās, p. 36, l. 15.

3. vāstandīs: vāstō, 1, *lay waste*. — quae pars eius montis: *i.e. in eā montis parte, quae*. — meae prōvinciae est: *belongs to* (lit. *is of*) *my province*.

5. Pindenissum: in apposition with oppidum. The exact location of this town is not known.

6. quod cum esset: *since this was (located)*.

7. mūnītissimō: transl. the superl. "strongly." — iīs . . . quī: with subjunctive, *such (people) as*;

for the position of -que, cf. ob eamque causam, p. 129, l. 5. — rēgibus: namely, of their own.

8. cum: (*and*) *since*. — fugitivōs: fugitivus, -ī, M., *runaway slave*.

9. existimātiōnem: existimātiō, -ōnis, F., *prestige*.

10. imperī: (*our*) *government*. — comprimere: comprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus, *put a stop to*.

11. quō: note the compar. in the clause. — aliēni . . . ab: *ill disposed toward*; cf. p. 148, l. 17:

12. imperiō: *rule*.

13. circumdedī: sc. oppidum.

14. saepsi: saepiō, 4, saepsi, saeptus, *surround*. — aggere: ag-

mentis multis, multis sagittariis, magno labore meo, sine ulla molestia sumptive sociorum, septimo quinquagesimo die rem confeci, ut omnibus partibus urbis disturbatis aut incensis, compulsi in potestatem meam pervenirent.

5 His erant finitimis pari scelere et audacia Tebarani. Ab his, Pindenissos captos, obsides accipi; exercitum in hiberna dimisi; Quintum fratrem negotio praeponi, ut in vicis aut captis aut male pacatis exercitus collocaretur.

ger, -eris, M., mound (of earth or other material). — viniis: vinia, -ae, F., penthouse. — tormentis: tormentum, -i, N., catapult. Cf. the ballista shown on p. 29.

1. sagittariis: sagittarius, -i, M., bowman. — meo: on my part.

2. molestia: molestia, -ae, F., inconvenience. — sumptu: sumptus, -us, M., expense. — sociorum: to (lit. of) the friendly natives (from whom a Roman governor usually felt at liberty to extort any service he desired).

3. ut: introducing a result

clause. — disturbatis: disturbō, 1, wreck.

4. compulsi: freely, in despair, lit. forced (to it); sc. hostes.

5. his: the people just subdued. — pari: par, paris, adj., equal. — scelere: scelus, -eris, N., guilt, lit. crime; the whole abl. phrase expresses quality. — Tebarani: subject of erant.

7. negotio . . . ut . . . exercitus collocaretur: freely, the business of quartering the army; lit. what? — aut captis, etc.: translate by a relative clause.